marantz®

AV Pre Tuner

AV8805

Owner's Manual

Connections

Playback

Settings

Tips

Appendix

Thank you for purchasing this Marantz product.
To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product.
After reading this manual, be sure to keep it for future reference.

Accessories

Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

Quick Start Guide	Safety Instructions	Notes on radio	Warranty (for USA/for CANADA)	Cable labels
Power cord	FM indoor antenna	AM loop antenna	Sound calibration microphone	Sound calibration microphone stand
Remote control unit (RC039SR)	R03/AAA batteries	External antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity		
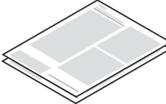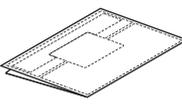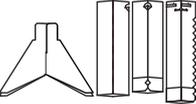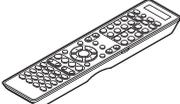
Inserting the batteries

1 **Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.**
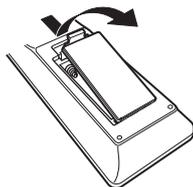
2 **Insert two batteries correctly into the battery compartment as indicated.**
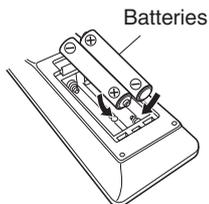
Batteries

3 **Put the rear cover back on.**

NOTE

- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.

Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.

Approx. 23 ft/7 m

30° 30°
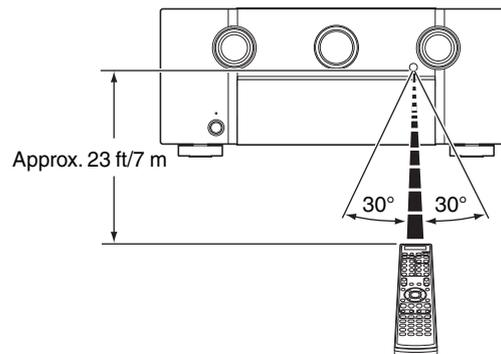
Features

High quality sound

- **Current feedback amplifier**

  This unit uses a high-speed current feedback amplifier circuit for its preamplifier so that signals from a Blu-ray Disc player and other equipment that support high-definition audio formats can be amplified with high fidelity. The high-speed current feedback amplifier also reproduces a natural sound space.

- **Dolby Atmos (**v **p. 319)**

  This unit is equipped with a decoder that supports Dolby Atmos audio format. The placement or movement of sound is accurately reproduced by the addition of overhead speakers, enabling you to experience an incredibly natural and realistic surround sound field.

- **DTS:X (**v **p. 322)**

  This unit is equipped with the DTS:X decoder technology. DTS:X brings the home theater experience to new heights with its immersive object based audio technology which removes the bounds of channels. The flexibility of objects allows for sound to be scaled large or small and moved around the room with greater accuracy than ever before leading to a richer immersive audio experience.

- **DTS Virtual:X (**v **p. 322)**

  DTS Virtual:X technology features DTS's proprietary virtual height and virtual surround processing to deliver an immersive sound experience from any type of input source (stereo to 7.1.4 channel) and speaker configuration.

- **Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment) (**v **p. 189)**

  Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

- **Discrete subwoofers and Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ (**v **p. 212)**

  The unit has two subwoofer output capability and can adjust the level and delay for each subwoofer individually.
  Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together for improved deep bass response and detail.

- **Auro-3D**

This unit is equipped with an Auro-3D decoder.

With Auro-3D, Front Height (FHL + FHR), Surround Height (SHL + SHR), Center Height (CH/optional) and Top Surround (TS/optional) are added to a conventional 5.1-channel system to achieve a natural and realistic sound field that is three-dimensional and fully immersive.

You will be able to fully enjoy Auro-3D playback if you properly place the speakers for Auro-3D.

■ Auro-3D playback
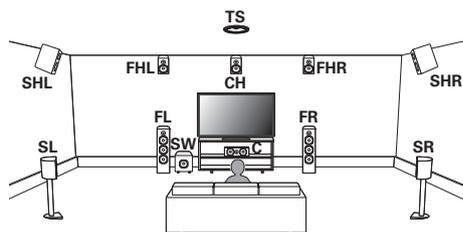
■ Dolby Atmos playback
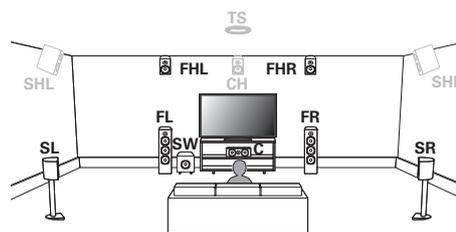
- Auro-3D does not support a Dolby Atmos configuration using Top Front, Top Middle or Top Rear speakers.
  But it is possible to support both an Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos by adding Front Height and Rear Height speakers* to a 5.1 configuration.

∗ For an optimum Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are strongly recommended.

High performance

- **4K 60Hz input/output supported**

4K 60p
4:4:4

4K 60p
4:4:4

When 4K Ultra HD (High Definition) is used, an input/output speed of 60 frames per second (60p) is achieved for video signals. When connected to 4K Ultra HD and 60p video signal input compatible TV, you can enjoy the sense of realism only available from high-definition images, even when viewing fast-moving video.
This unit also supports image processing for 4K 60p, 4:4:4 and 24-bit videos. By processing the video at the original resolution, this unit lets you enjoy flawless, high-definition picture quality.
This unit also supports HDR (High Dynamic Range) and BT.2020 wide color gamut.

- **HDCP 2.2**
  This unit is compatible with HDCP 2.2 copyright protection standard.

- **Digital video processor upscales analog video signals (SD resolution) to HD (720p/1080p) and 4K** (v p. 201)

4K

4K

Up to 1080p

4K
Up scaling

4K Ultra HD

This unit is equipped with a 4K video upscaling function that allows analog video or SD (Standard Definition) video to be output via HDMI at 4K (3840 × 2160 pixels) resolution. This function enables the device to be connected to a TV using a single HDMI cable, and produces high definition images for any video source.

- **Equipped with HDMI ZONE2 output** (v p. 169)
  The ZONE2 multi-room output includes an HDMI output that lets you enjoy a different A/V source in that room, with another program playing in the main room.

- **HDMI connections enable connection to various digital AV devices (8 inputs, 3 outputs)**

8 / 3
In   Out
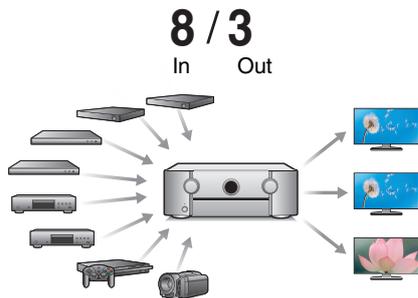
For connection to a broad range of digital sources, this unit features 8 HDMI inputs, including 1 on the front panel that lets you quickly and conveniently connect a camcorder, game console or other HDMI-equipped device. There are dual HDMI outputs for the main room, and a third HDMI output for another room.

- **The device is equipped with a AirPlay® function in addition to network functions such as Internet radio etc. (v p. 133)**
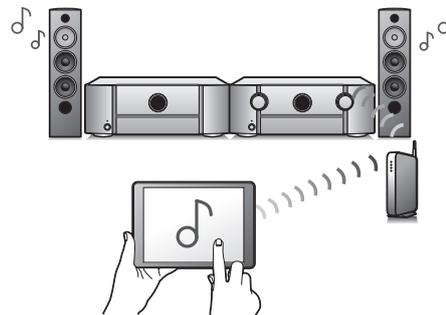
You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet Radio, playing audio files stored on your PC.
This unit also supports Apple AirPlay which lets you stream your music library from an iPhone®, iPad®, iPod touch® or iTunes®.

- **Playback of DSD and FLAC files via USB and networks**

This unit supports the playback of high resolution audio formats such as DSD (5.6 MHz) and FLAC 192 kHz files. It provides high quality playback of high resolution files.

- **Wireless connection with Bluetooth devices can be carried out easily** (v p. 105)
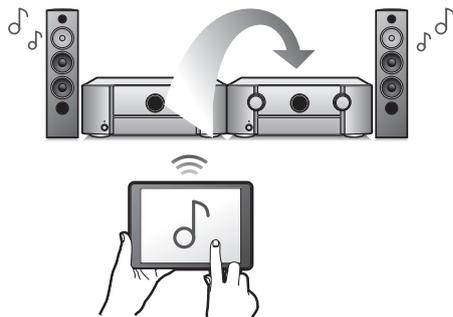
You can enjoy music simply by connecting wirelessly with your smartphone, tablet, PC, etc.

- **Multi-Room audio** (v p. 144)

【MAIN ZONE】　　　　【ZONE2】 / 【ZONE3】
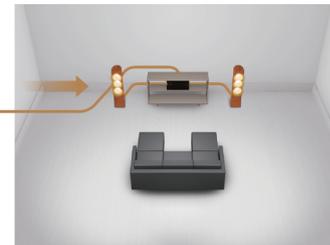
You can select and play back the respective inputs in MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.
In addition, when the All Zone Stereo function is used, the music being played back in MAIN ZONE can be enjoyed in all the zones at the same time. This is useful when you want to let the BGM propagate throughout the whole house.

- **Energy-saving design**

This unit is equipped with an auto-standby function that automatically turns off the power supply when the unit is not in use. This helps reduce unnecessary power use.

- **Compatible with the "Marantz 2016 AVR Remote" App** for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android™ devices (Google, Amazon Kindle Fire)

Along with many new features, the graphics and user interface have been completely overhauled. The new app gives you full control of the AVR as well as access to its setup menu for detailed adjustments from your phones or tablets. "Marantz 2016 AVR Remote" App also gives you quick access to the receiver's status display, option menus, Marantz Blu-ray Disc player control, and online owner's manual for your convenience.

∗ Download the appropriate "Marantz 2016 AVR Remote" App for your iOS or Android devices. This unit needs to be connected to the same LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) network that the iPhone or iPod touch is connected to.

- **HEOS provides streaming music from your favorite online music sources**
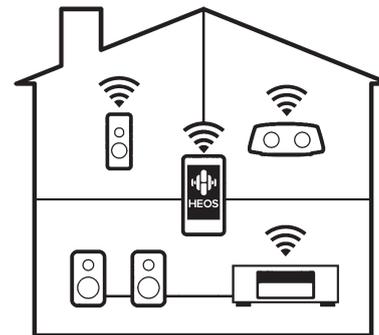
HEOS wireless multi-room sound system that enables you to enjoy your favorite music anywhere and everywhere around your home. By utilizing your existing home network and the HEOS App (available for iOS, Android and Amazon devices), you can explore, browse, and play music from your own music library or from many online streaming music services.

When multiple HEOS devices are connected to the same network, HEOS devices can be grouped to play back the same music on all devices simultaneously, or different music can be played on each separate HEOS device.

Easy operation

- **"Setup Assistant" provides easy-to-follow setup instructions**
  First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.

- **Easy to use Graphical User Interface**
  This unit is equipped with a Graphical User Interface for improved operability.

Part names and functions

Front panel

For details, see the next page.

❸ INPUT SELECTOR knob

This selects the input source. (☞ p. 99)

❹ Main display

This displays various pieces of information. (☞ p. 22)

❺ Remote control sensor

This receives signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 9)

❻ VOLUME knob

This adjusts the volume level. (☞ p. 100)

❼ Door

When you are using buttons and/or connectors behind the door, press the bottom of the door to open it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.

❶ Power operation button (⏻)

Used to turn the power of the MAIN ZONE (room where this unit is located) on/off (standby). (☞ p. 99)

❷ Power indicator

This is lit as follows according to the power status:

- Off: Power on
- Red: Normal standby
- Orange:
  - When "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "On" (☞ p. 194)
  - When "HDMI Control" is set to "On" (☞ p. 196)
  - When "Network Control" is set to "Always On" (☞ p. 248)

With the door open

ⒸM-DAX button/indicator

This enables the M-DAX mode. (v p. 184)
This lights when the M-DAX mode is selected.

ⒹDynamic Volume button (DYNAMIC VOL)

This switches the Dynamic Volume settings. (v p. 189)

ⒺSub display

This displays various pieces of information. (v p. 24)

ⒻBACK button

This returns to the previous screen.

ⒼCursor buttons (△▽◁▷)

These select items.

ⒽENTER button

This determines the selection.

ⒾSETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (v p. 178)

ⒶDYNAMIC EQ button

This switches the Dynamic EQ settings. (v p. 188)

ⒷPURE DIRECT button/indicator

This switches the sound mode between Direct, Pure Direct and Auto.
(v p. 147 – 148)
This lights when the Pure Direct mode is selected as the sound mode.

⓭ Information button (INFO)

This displays the status information on the TV screen. (☞ p. 261)

⓮ SLEEP button

This sets the sleep timer. (☞ p. 160)

⓯ HDMI OUT button

This sets the HDMI monitor output. (☞ p. 194)

⓰ DIMMER button

Each press of this switches the brightness of the display. (☞ p. 256)

⓱ STATUS button

Each press of this switches the status information that is shown on the display.
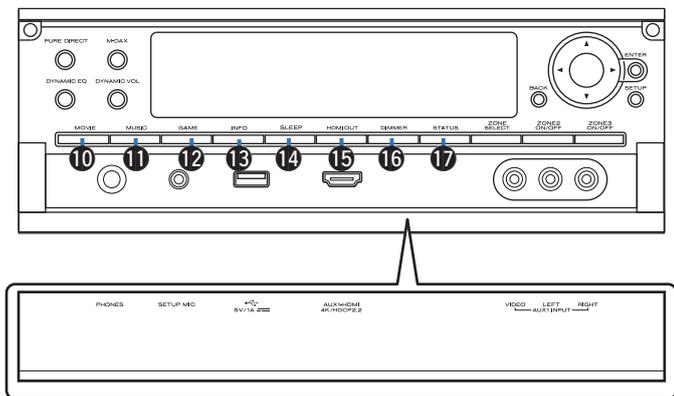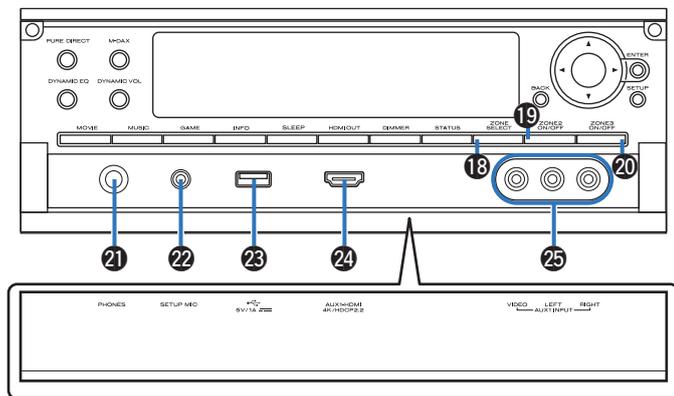
⓾ MOVIE button

This switches the sound mode to "Movie". (☞ p. 146)

⓫ MUSIC button

This switches the sound mode to "Music". (☞ p. 146)

⓬ GAME button

This switches the sound mode to "Game". (☞ p. 146)

Q ZONE SELECT button

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3) that is operated through the remote control unit. (v p. 172, 178)

Q ZONE2 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE2 on/off. (v p. 172)

Q ZONE3 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE3 on/off. (v p. 172)

Q Headphones jack (PHONES)

This is used to connect headphones.

When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the PRE OUT connectors.

NOTE

- To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

Q SETUP MIC jack

This is used to connect the supplied Sound calibration microphone. (v p. 214)

Q USB port ( )

This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices). (v p. 90)

Q AUX1-HDMI connector

This is used to connect HDMI output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. (v p. 87)

Q AUX1 INPUT connectors

Used to connect analog output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. (v p. 87)

Display

■ Main display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

❏ Standard display

❏ Tuner display

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "Tuner".
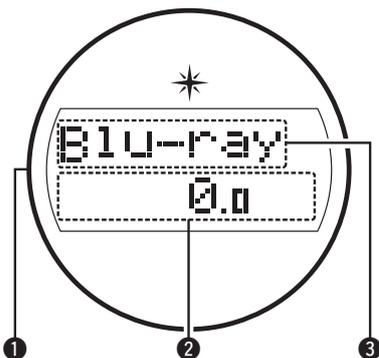
A **Light illumination**

When the power to this device is switched on, the surrounding area is lit blue. The settings can be changed so the light does not switch on.
(☞ p. 168)

B **Volume indicator**

C **Input source indicator**

The currently selected input source name is displayed.

If the input source name has been changed using "Source Rename" in the menu, the input source name after the change is displayed.
(☞ p. 208)
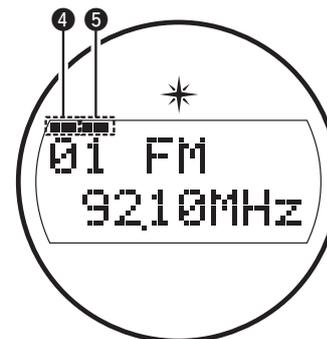
D Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

E In the FM mode, this lights up when receiving stereo broadcasts.

❏ Sleep timer indicator

❻
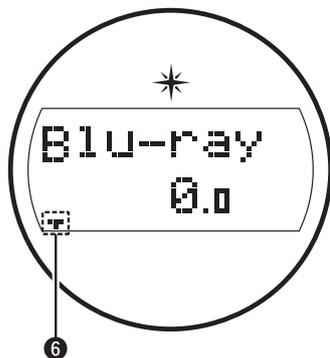
❻ This lights when the sleep mode is selected. (⟲ p. 160)

❏ ZONE2/ZONE3 power on display

❼ ❽
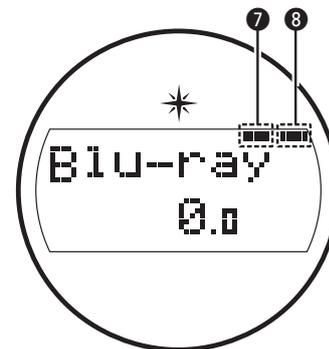
❼ This lights up when ZONE2 (another room) power is turned on.
(⟲ p. 172)

❽ This lights up when ZONE3 (another room) power is turned on.
(⟲ p. 172)

■ Sub display
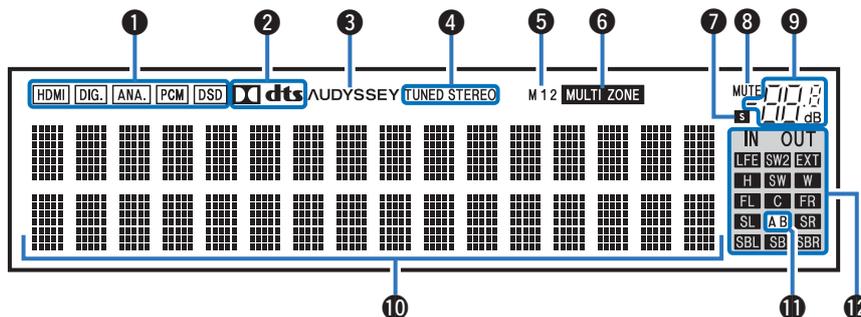
A Input signal indicators

The respective indicator will light corresponding to the input signal. (☞ p. 210)

B Decoder indicators

These light when Dolby or DTS signals are input or when the Dolby or DTS decoder is running.

C Audyssey® indicator

This lights when "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ", "Dynamic Volume" or "Audyssey LFC™" has been set up. (☞ p. 187)

D Tuner reception mode indicators

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "Tuner".

TUNED: Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

STEREO: Lights up when receiving FM stereo broadcasts.

E Monitor output indicator

These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting. When set to "Auto(Dual)", the indicators light according to connection status.

F MULTI ZONE indicator

This lights up when ZONE2 or ZONE3 (another room) power is turned on. (☞ p. 172)

HDMI DIG. ANA. PCM DSD dts AUDYSSEY TUNED STEREO   M 1 2 MULTI ZONE

MUTE
dB

IN OUT
LFE SW2 EXT
H SW W
FL C FR
SL A B SR
SBL SB SBR
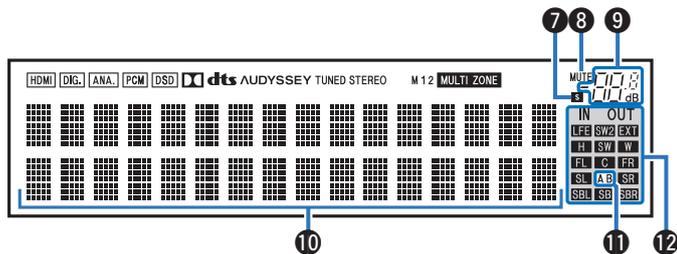
G Sleep timer indicator

This lights when the sleep mode is selected. (v p. 160)

H MUTE indicator

This blinks while the sound is muted. (v p. 100)

I Volume indicator

J Information display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

K Front speaker indicator

This lights according to the setting of the front A and B speakers.

L Input/output signal channel indicators

The channel for input/output signals is displayed according to the setting configured for "Channel Indicators". (v p. 256)

- When "Channel Indicators" is set to "Output" (Default)
  These light when audio signals are being output from the speakers.
- When "Channel Indicators" is set to "Input"
  These light corresponding to the channels that include the input signals.

When playing HD Audio sources, the EXT indicator lights when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back, front height, front wide or LFE channel) is input.

Rear panel
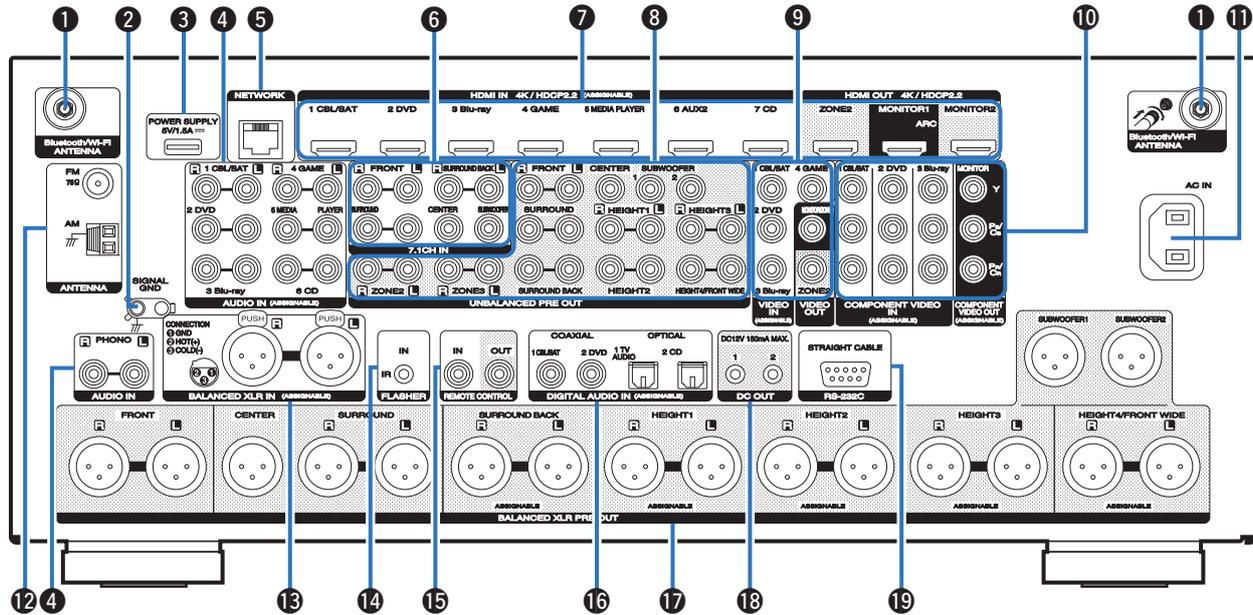
For details, see the next page.
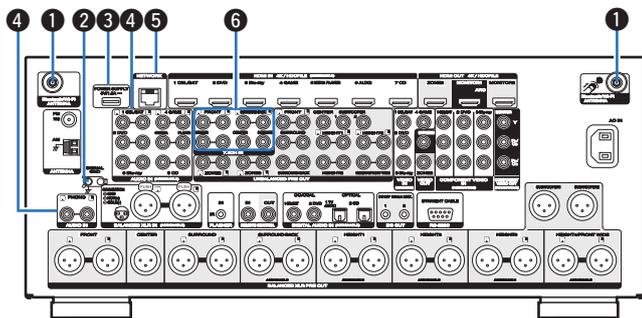
A Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors

Used to connect the included external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity when connecting to a network via wireless LAN, or when connecting to a handheld device via Bluetooth. (ｖ p. 94)

① Place the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity evenly over the screw terminal of rear.
② Turn clockwise until the antennas is fully connected.
③ Rotate the antenna upwards for best reception.
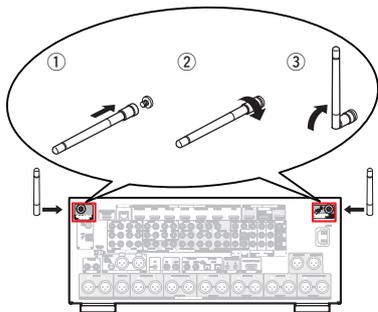
B SIGNAL GND terminal

Used to connect a ground wire for the turntable. (ｖ p. 88)

C USB port (POWER SUPPLY)

Can be used to power streaming media players, etc.

- Use a device's supplied AC adapter when a power supply of 5 V/1.5 A or more is required.
- Connect to the USB port on the front panel to play content from a USB memory device.

D Analog audio connectors (AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with analog audio connectors.
- "Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)" (ｖ p. 85)
- "Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player" (ｖ p. 86)
- "Connecting a turntable" (ｖ p. 88)

E NETWORK connector

Used to connect to a LAN cable when connecting to a wired LAN network. (ｖ p. 93)

F 7.1-channel input connectors (7.1CH IN)

Used to connect to a device that has multi-channel audio output connectors. (ｖ p. 89)
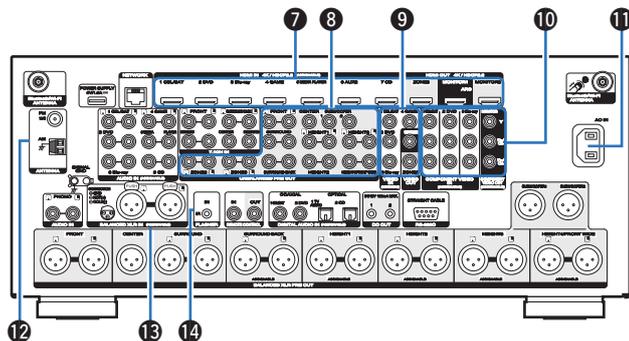
G HDMI connectors

Used to connect devices equipped with HDMI connectors.

- "Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)" (v p. 80)
- "Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)" (v p. 81)
- "Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)" (v p. 85)
- "Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player" (v p. 86)

H UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connectors

Used to connect a power amp with UNBALANCED RCA input connectors. (v p. 46)

I Video connectors (VIDEO)

Used to connect devices equipped with video connectors.

- "Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector" (v p. 82)
- "Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)" (v p. 85)
- "Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player" (v p. 86)

J Component video connectors (COMPONENT VIDEO)

Used to connect devices equipped with component video connectors.

- "Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector" (v p. 82)
- "Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)" (v p. 85)
- "Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player" (v p. 86)

K AC inlet (AC IN)

Used to connect the power cord. (v p. 97)

L FM/AM antenna terminals (ANTENNA)

Used to connect FM antennas and AM loop antennas. (v p. 91)

M BALANCED XLR IN connectors

Used to connect devices equipped with BALANCED XLR output connectors. (v p. 84)

N FLASHER IN jack

Used when using a control BOX or other such control devices to control this unit.
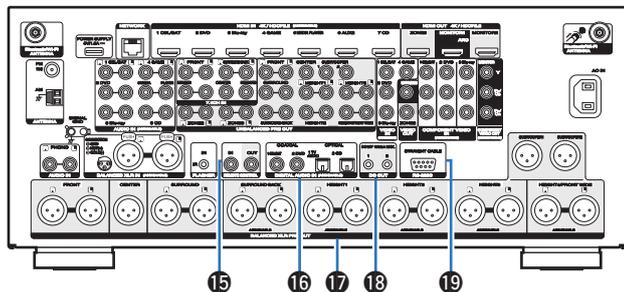
Ⓞ **REMOTE CONTROL jacks**

Used to connect infrared receivers/transmitters in order to operate this unit and external devices from a different room. (ⓒ p. 95)

Ⓟ **Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO)**

Used to connect devices equipped with digital audio connectors.

- "Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)" (ⓒ p. 81)
- "Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector" (ⓒ p. 82)
- "Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)" (ⓒ p. 85)
- "Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player" (ⓒ p. 86)

Ⓠ **BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connectors**

Used to connect a power amp with BALANCED XLR input connectors. (ⓒ p. 44)

Ⓡ **DC OUT jacks**

Used to connect devices equipped with the trigger function. (ⓒ p. 96)

Ⓢ **RS-232C connector**

Used to connect home automation controller devices fitted with RS-232C connectors. Consult the owner's manual of the home automation controller for more information about serial control of this unit.

Perform the operation below beforehand.

ⓐ Turn on the power of this unit.
ⓑ Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
ⓒ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

NOTE

- Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

Remote control unit
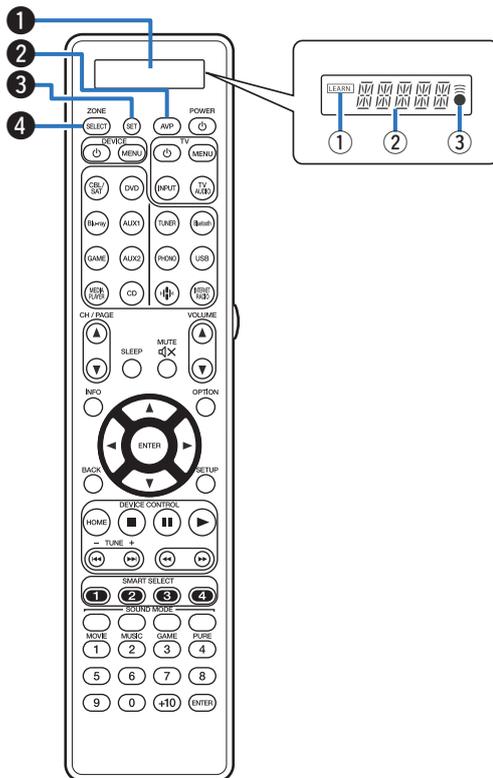
A Display

① LEARN indicator

This is lit when setting the learning function for the remote control unit. (☞ p. 272)

② Information display

- This displays "AVP" when operating this unit.
- This displays the input source name when operating an external device.
- This displays "TV" when operating TV.

③ ⩲ indicator

This is lit when signals are sent from the remote control unit.

B AVP operation button

When preset codes are registered to the remote control unit, press this button and then operate the menu on the unit.

C SET button

This is used for various settings on the remote control unit. (☞ p. 263 - 276)

D ZONE SELECT button

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3) that is operated through the remote control unit. (☞ p. 172, 178)
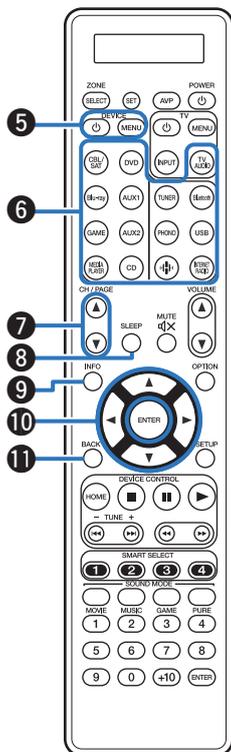
E **Device operation buttons (DEVICE ⏻ / DEVICE MENU)**

These turn the power of external devices on/off and call up menus.
Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons.
(☞ p. 263)

F **Input source select buttons**

These select the input source.
- "Selecting the input source" (☞ p. 99)
- "Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3" (☞ p. 172)

G **Channel/page search buttons (CH/PAGE ▲▼)**

These select radio stations registered to presets or switch pages.
(☞ p. 114)

H **SLEEP button**

This sets the sleep timer. (☞ p. 160)

I **Information button (INFO)**

This displays the status information on the TV screen. (☞ p. 261)

J **Cursor buttons (△▽◁▷)**

These select items.

K **BACK button**

This returns to the previous screen.
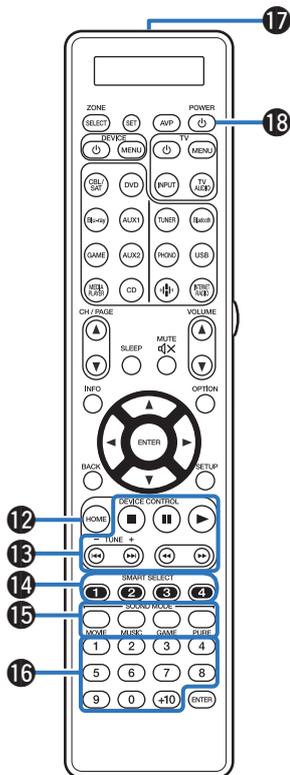
⑫ HOME button

This takes you to the Home screen (Top screen) when the input source is "HEOS Music". (⇒ p. 102)

⑬ System buttons

These perform playback related operations.

Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, −)

These select either FM broadcast or AM broadcast. (⇒ p. 111)

⑭ SMART SELECT buttons (1 - 4)

These call up settings registered to each button, such as input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (⇒ p. 162)

⑮ SOUND MODE buttons

These select the sound mode. (⇒ p. 145)

⑯ Number buttons

These enter numbers into the unit. (⇒ p. 111)

⑰ Remote control signal transmitter

This transmits signals from the remote control unit. (⇒ p. 9)

⑱ POWER button (Φ)

This turns the power on/off.

- "Turning the power on" (⇒ p. 99)
- "Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3" (⇒ p. 172)
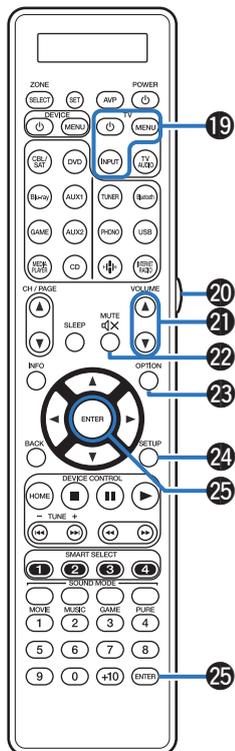
⑲ TV operation buttons (TV ⏻ / TV MENU / TV INPUT)

These turn the TV power on/off, switch the TV input and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons. (☞ p. 268)

⑳ Light button

This turns on the backlight for approx. 2 seconds. (☞ p. 275)

㉑ VOLUME buttons (▲▼)

These adjust the volume level.

- "Adjusting the volume" (☞ p. 100)
- "Adjusting the volume (ZONE2/ZONE3)" (☞ p. 173)

㉒ MUTE button (⏥✕)

This mutes the output audio.

- "Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)" (☞ p. 100)
- "Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2/ZONE3)" (☞ p. 173)

㉓ OPTION button

This displays the option menu on the TV screen.

㉔ SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 178)

㉕ ENTER button

This determines the selection.

■ Contents

> **NOTE**
>
> - Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the "Setup Assistant" is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" (page 9 in the separate "Quick Start Guide") screen for making connections. (During "Setup Assistant" operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
> - Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

■ Cables used for connections

Provide necessary cables according to the devices you want to connect.

Speaker cable	
Subwoofer cable	
HDMI cable	
Component video cable	
Video cable	
Coaxial digital cable	
Optical cable	
Audio cable	
XLR cable	
LAN cable	
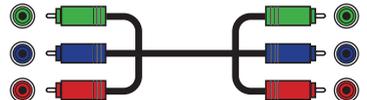
Speaker installation

Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room.
Speaker installation is explained using this example of a typical installation.
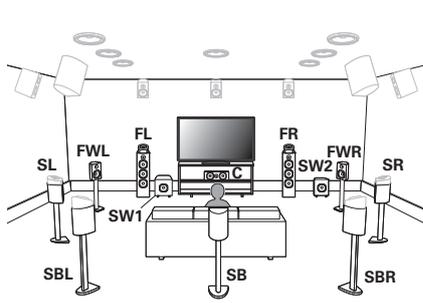
FL/FR (Front speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position. The distance between each speaker and your TV should also be the same.
C (Center speaker)**:**	Place the CENTER speaker in between the front speakers and above or below your TV.
SL/SR (Surround speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND left and right speakers an equal distance to the left and right sides of the main listening position. If you don't have surround back speakers, move the surround speakers slightly behind your listening position.
SBL/SBR (Surround back speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND BACK left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position and directly behind the main listening position. When using a single surround back speaker (SB), place it directly behind the listening position.
FWL/FWR (Front wide speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT WIDE left and right speakers outside of the front left and right speakers so that there is an equal distance between all front speakers.
SW 1/2 (Subwoofer)**:**	Place the SUBWOOFER at a convenient location near the front speakers. If you have two subwoofers, place them asymmetrically across the front of your room.
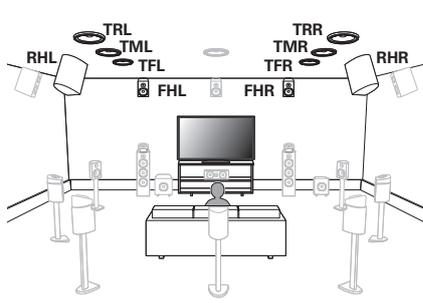
FHL/FHR (Front height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the front speakers. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.
TFL/TFR (Top front speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP FRONT left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly in front of your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
TML/TMR (Top middle speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP MIDDLE left and right speakers directly above the main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
TRL/TRR (Top rear speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP REAR left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly behind your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
RHL/RHR (Rear height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the REAR HEIGHT left and right speakers directly behind the main listening position. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
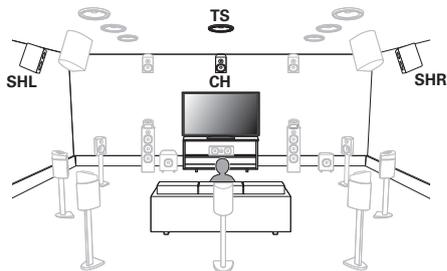
SHL/SHR
(Surround height speaker left/right)**:**
Place the SURROUND HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the surround speakers.

CH
(Center height speaker)**:**
Place the CENTER HEIGHT speaker directly above the center speaker. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.

TS
(Top surround speaker)**:**
Place the TOP SURROUND speaker directly above the main listening position and aligned with the center channel speaker.

• For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.
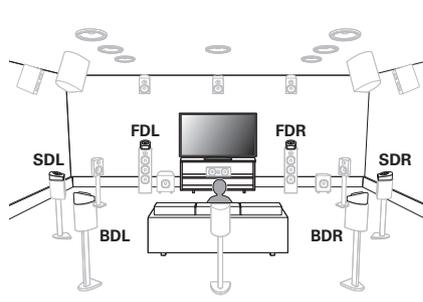
FDL/FDR (Front Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the front speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled integrated with a front speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the front speaker.
SDL/SDR (Surround Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround speaker.
BDL/BDR (Back Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the BACK Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround back speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround back speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround back speaker.

About Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers reflect the sound off the ceiling to allow the sound to come from over your head by using a special upward-pointing speaker that is placed on the floor.

You can enjoy the Dolby Atmos 3D sound even in an environment where speakers cannot be installed on the ceiling.
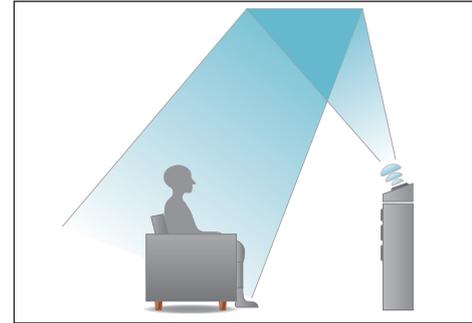
- This unit is compatible with Dolby Atmos and DTS:X which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation.
- Dolby Atmos is not supported in a 5.1-channel or less speaker configuration.
- DTS:X can be selected regardless of the speaker configuration.
- Auro-3D recommends adding FRONT HEIGHT and SURROUND HEIGHT speakers to a 5.1 speaker configuration. Optionally, you may substitute REAR HEIGHT, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers instead of FRONT HEIGHT and SURROUND HEIGHT speakers for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X and Auro-3D playback.
- Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.

【Viewed from the side】
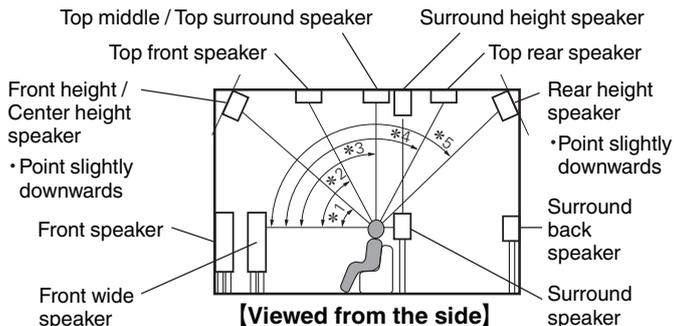
*1 30° - 45°   *2 30° - 55°   *3 65° - 100°
*4 125° - 150°   *5 135° - 150°

Height speakers layout
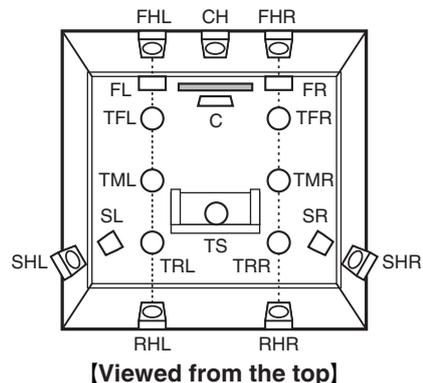
【Viewed from the top】

- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

■ When 7.1-channel speakers are installed using surround back speakers
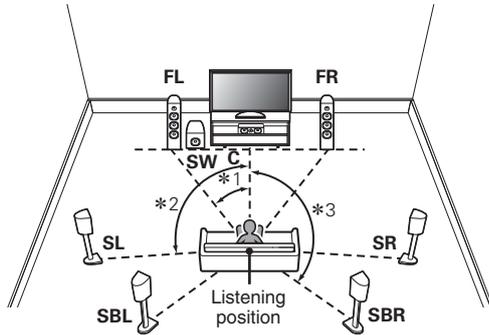
*1 22° - 30° *2 90° - 110° *3 135° - 150°

- When using a single surround back speaker, place it directly behind the listening position.

■ When 9.1-channel speakers are installed using front wide speakers
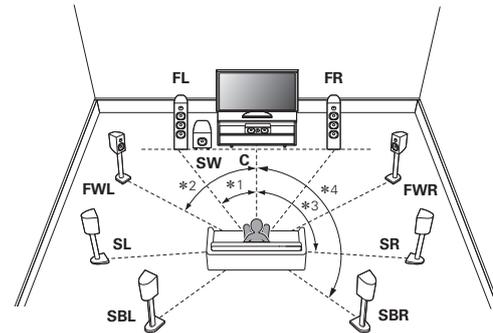
*1 22° - 30° *2 50° - 70° *3 90° - 110° *4 135° - 150°

■ When 5.1-channel speakers are installed

∗1 22° - 30° ∗2 120°
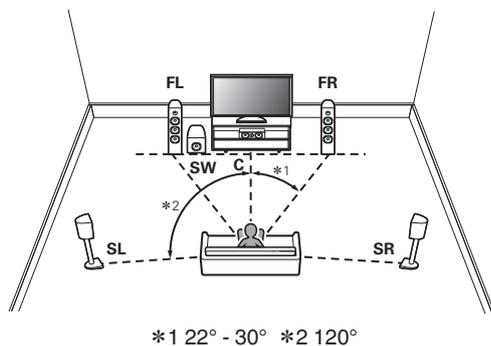
■ Layout including height speakers and ceiling speakers

❑ Height speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front height/rear height/center height speakers.
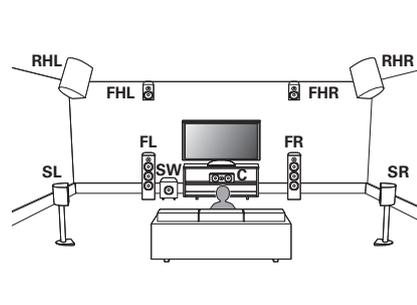
❑ Ceiling speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and top front/top middle/top rear speakers.
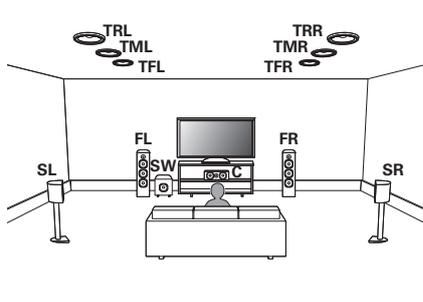
❑ Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker layout example

Combination of 7.1-channel layout and front Dolby/surround Dolby/back Dolby speakers.
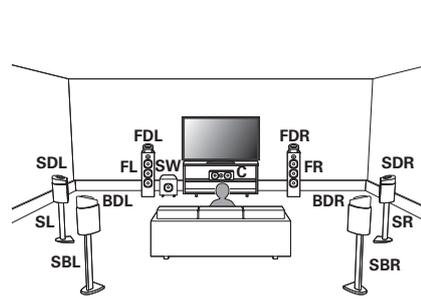
❏ Auro-3D layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel speakers with front height/surround height/center height/top surround speakers.
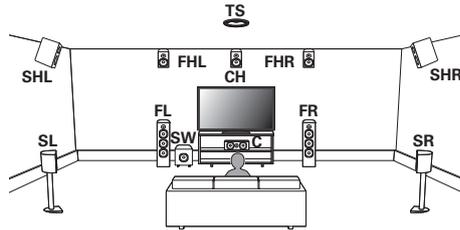
🖉

- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Connecting a power amp

Before connecting a power amp

- Connect a power amp (sold separately) to the PRE OUT connector of this unit.
- This unit has UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connector and BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connector. Connect to the correct connector for your power amp. If your power amp has both connectors, connect to either of them.
- Connect the speakers to the power amp.
- For details on speaker connections, see the Owner's Manual for the power amp.
- This section shows how to make a 13.1-channel connection.

  For how to make other speaker connections, see page .

【 AV8805 BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connector PIN arrangement 】

① ②
③

① GND (Ground)
② HOT (+)
③ COLD (−)

The PIN arrangement in this device uses the European method.

In the USA method, ② is COLD, and ③ is HOT.

When connecting a device that utilizes the USA type of PIN arrangement, replace the ② and ③ plugs on one side of the balanced cable.

NOTE

- Do not short the HOT and GND or COLD and GND for use.
- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers.

  Also, turn off the power amp and subwoofer.

■ Example of connections to Marantz MM8077 and MM7025 power amps

❑ Connecting the UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connector

When using UNBALANCED RCA connectors for connection, set the input change switch to "UNBALANCED" on MM8077.

SW C SBR SBL SR SL FR FL RHR RHL TMR TML FHR FHL
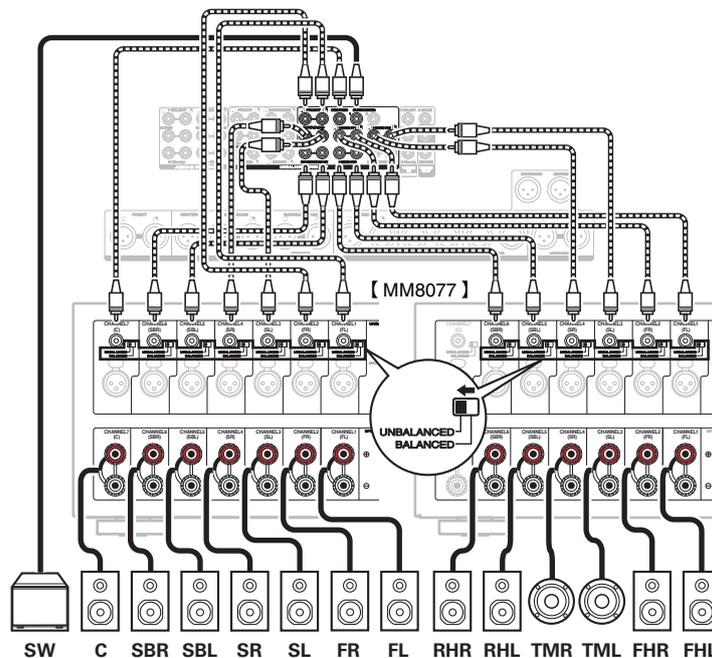
❏ Connecting the BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connector

When using BALANCED XLR connectors for connection, set the input change switch to "BALANCED" on MM8077.

SW C SBR SBL SR SL FR FL RHR RHL TMR TML FHR FHL
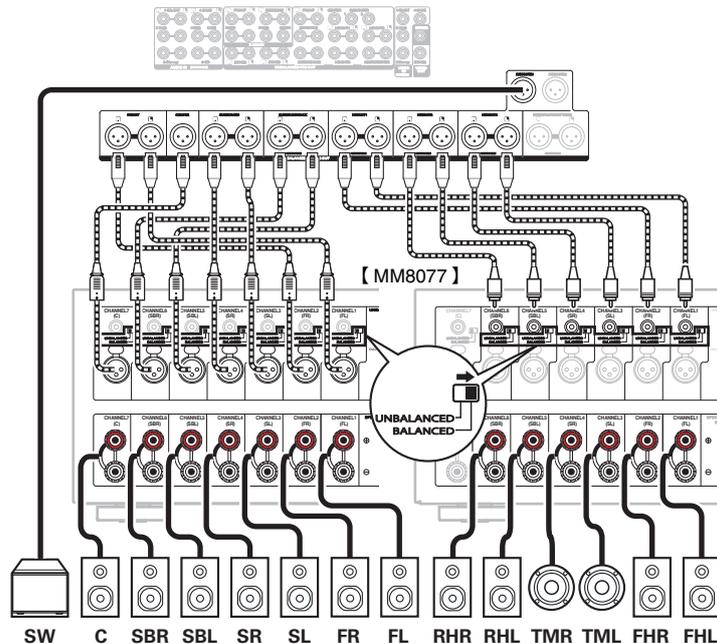
■ About the cable labels (supplied) for channel identification

Attach the cable label corresponding to each speaker to each speaker cable.

This makes it easier to connect the speakers to the power amp.

Channel	Color
FRONT L	White
FRONT R	Red
CENTER	Green
SURROUND L	Light Blue
SURROUND R	Blue
SURROUND BACK L	Beige
SURROUND BACK R	Brown
FRONT WIDE L	Light Yellow
FRONT WIDE R	Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT R	Yellow
TOP FRONT L	Light Yellow
TOP FRONT R	Yellow
TOP MIDDLE L	Light Yellow
TOP MIDDLE R	Yellow
TOP REAR L	Light Yellow
TOP REAR R	Yellow

Channel	Color
SURROUND HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
SURROUND HEIGHT R	Yellow
REAR HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
REAR HEIGHT R	Yellow
TOP SURROUND	Light Yellow
CENTER HEIGHT	Yellow
FRONT DOLBY L	Light Yellow
FRONT DOLBY R	Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY L	Light Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY R	Yellow
BACK DOLBY L	Light Yellow
BACK DOLBY R	Yellow
SUBWOOFER1	Black
SUBWOOFER2	Black

Refer to the table and attach the label to each speaker cable.

〖 How to attach the cable labels 〗

Speaker

Power amp

FRONT L
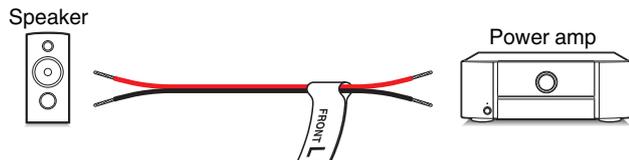
Speaker configuration and "Amp Assign" settings

This system configuration plays back 13-channels. You can create speaker systems such as a bi-amp connection by changing the "Amp Assign" settings. Perform "Amp Assign" settings to suit the speaker configuration to be installed. (☞ p. 222)

Playback speaker in MAIN ZONE	"Amp Assign" settings	Connection page
5.1-channel playback	13.1ch (Default)	51
7.1-channel playback	13.1ch (Default)	52
9.1-channel playback	13.1ch (Default)	57
13.1-channel playback	13.1ch (Default)	66
13.1-channel playback (Dolby Atmos and Auro-3D)	13.1ch (Default)	71
11.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)	11.1ch (Bi-Amp)	77
11.1-channel playback + second pair of front speakers	11.1ch + Front B	78

The sound mode that can be selected varies according to the speaker configuration. See "Sound modes and channel output" (☞ p. 310) for the sound modes that are supported.

The following pages provide basic connection examples.

Refer to the example connection for "Example connection for the Auro-3D 9.1-channel system" (v p. 64) when playing Auro-3D with a 9.1-channel system using the basic 5.1-channel system and the front height and surround height speakers.

Also refer to the connection example for "Example connection for the Auro-3D 13.1-channel system" (v p. 70) when playing Auro-3D with a 13.1-channel system by adding the Surround Back, Top Surround and Center Height speakers.

- In addition to the connections described in p.51 - 78, this unit allows for various speaker connections with the "Amp Assign" setting.

  Also refer to the menu screen in "View Terminal Config." on the "Amp Assign" setting screen, which shows how to make connections in your environment.
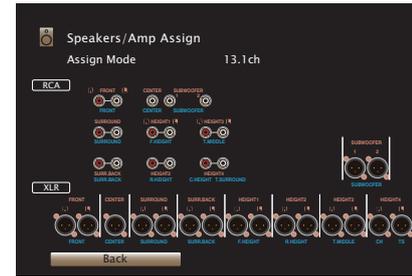
Connecting 5.1-channel speakers

This serves as a basic 5.1-channel surround system.
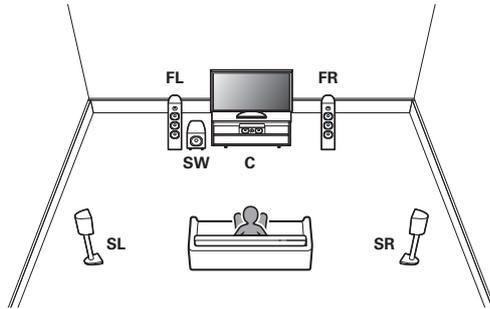
【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
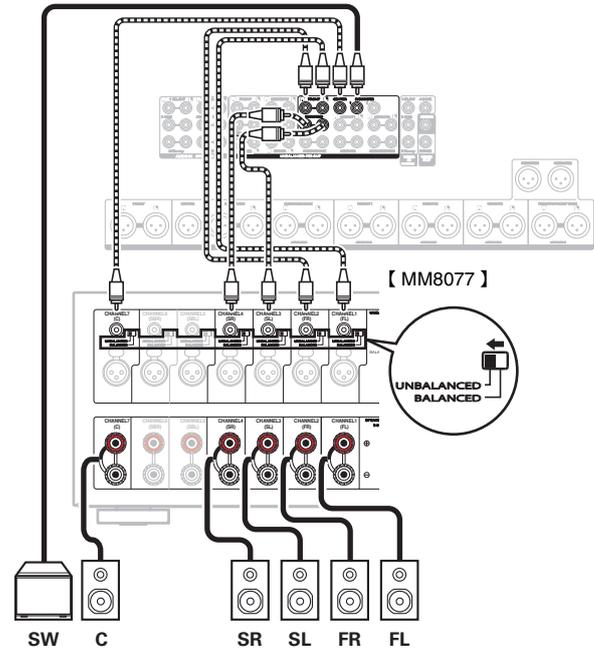
Connecting 7.1-channel speakers

■ Example connections when using surround back speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with surround back speakers.

FL FR

SW C

SL SR

SBL SBR

🖉
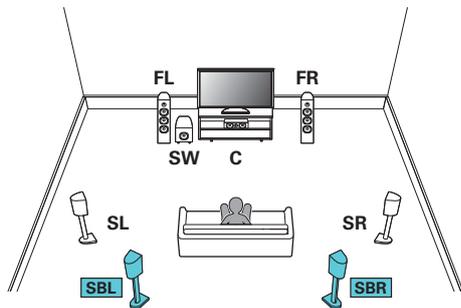
• Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. ()

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

【 MM8077 】

UNBALANCED
BALANCED

SW C SBR SBL SR SL FR FL

🖉
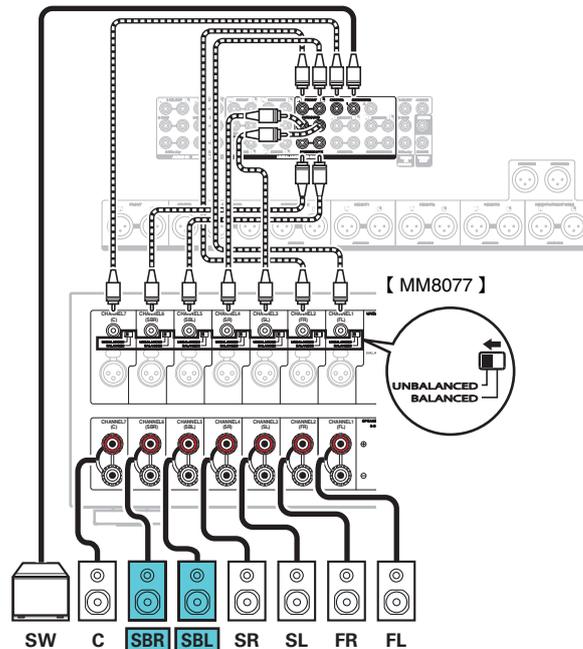
• When using a single surround back speaker, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L terminal.

■ Example connections when using front wide speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front wide speakers.

✎
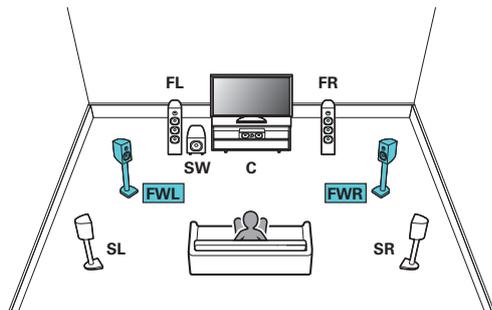
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & FW" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223)

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
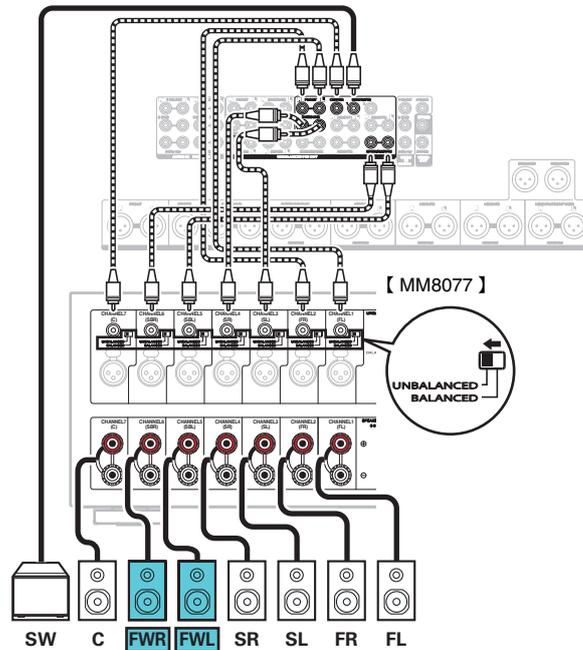
■ Example connections when using ceiling speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with ceiling speakers.

✎
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (v p. 223)
- The top front or top rear speakers can be connected instead of the top middle speakers. In this case, set the ceiling speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (v p. 225)

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

■ Example connections when using height speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front height speakers.
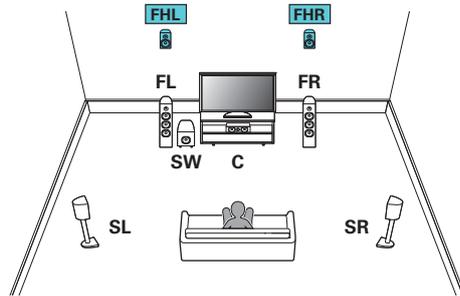
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223)
- The rear height speakers can be connected instead of the front height speakers. In this case, set the height speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ p. 225)

【Example】UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
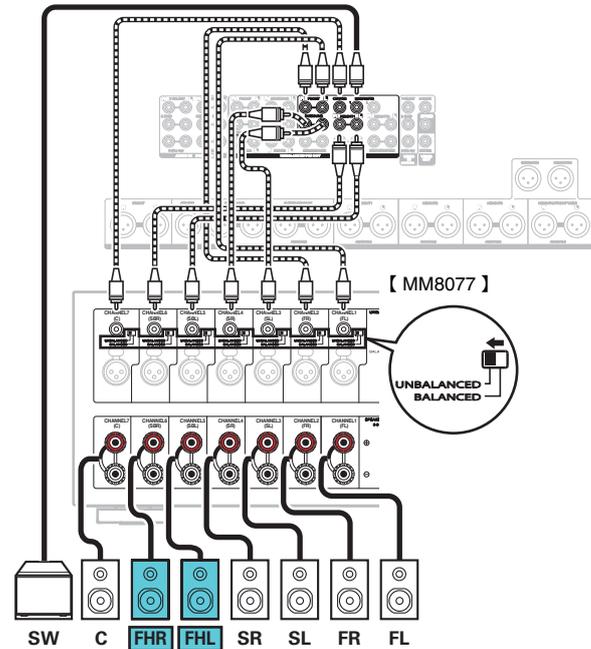
■ Example connections when using Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front Dolby speakers.

✎
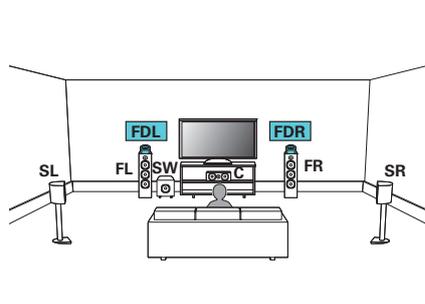
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Dolby Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. ()
- The surround Dolby speakers can be connected instead of the front Dolby speakers. In this case, set the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. ()

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

Connecting 9.1-channel speakers

■ Example connection when using surround back and front wide speakers
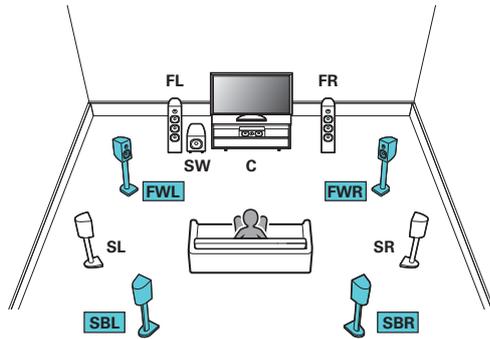
• Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB & FW" in the menu when connecting in this configuration.

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
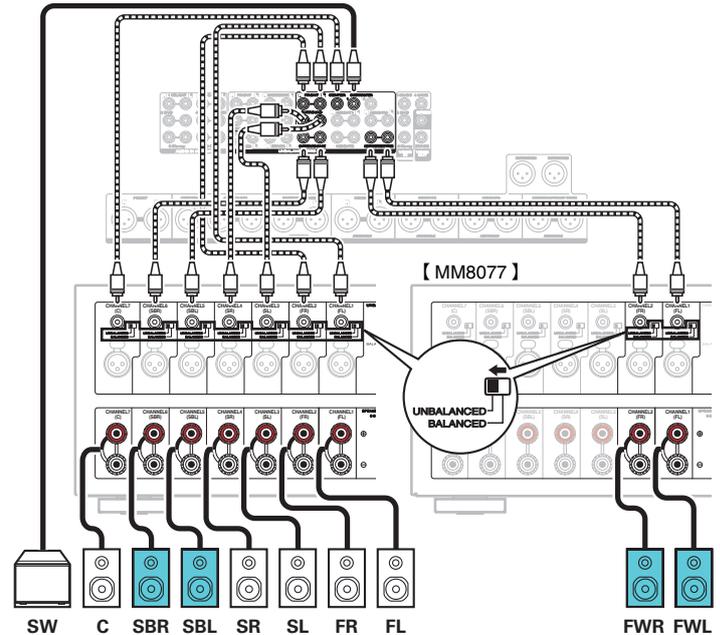
■ Example connection when using one set of ceiling speakers
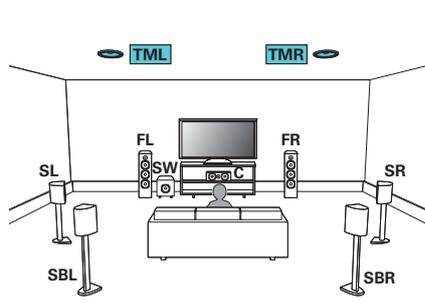
• Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 224)

[Example] UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
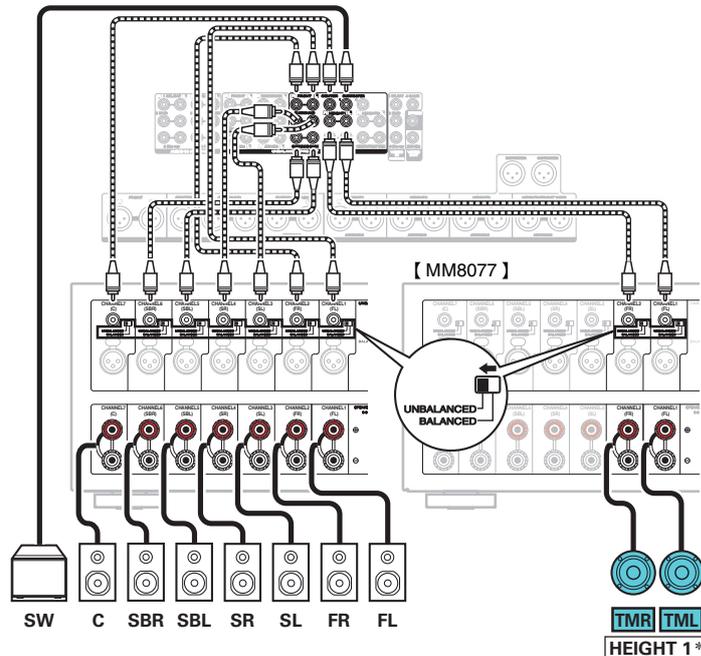
＊ The top front or top rear speakers can be connected instead of the top middle speakers. In this case, set the ceiling speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ p. 225)

■ Example connection when using two sets of ceiling speakers
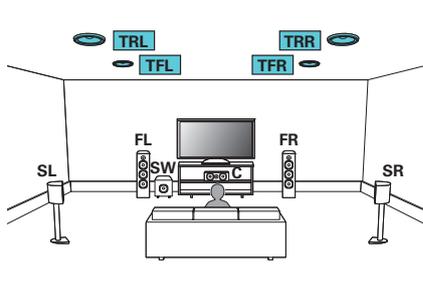
✎
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223)

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
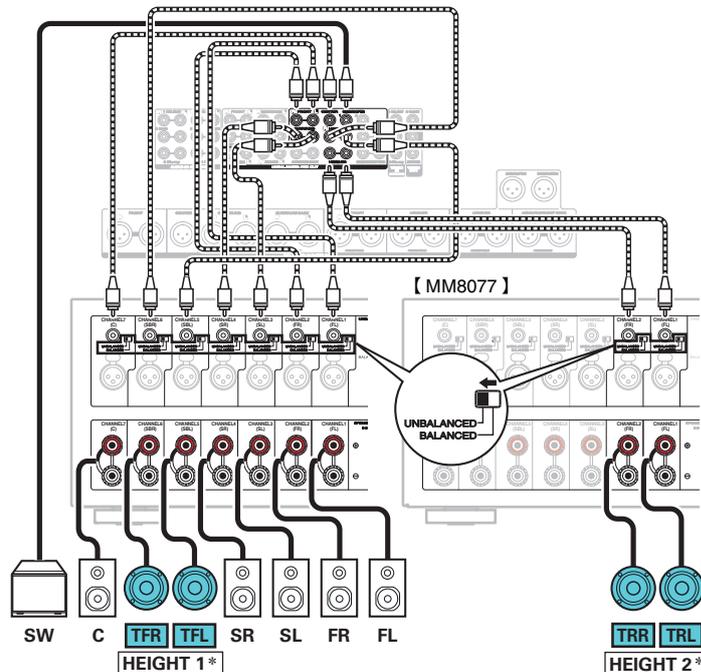
＊ You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

■ Example connection when using one set of height speakers

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

🖉

• Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ <u>p. 224</u>)
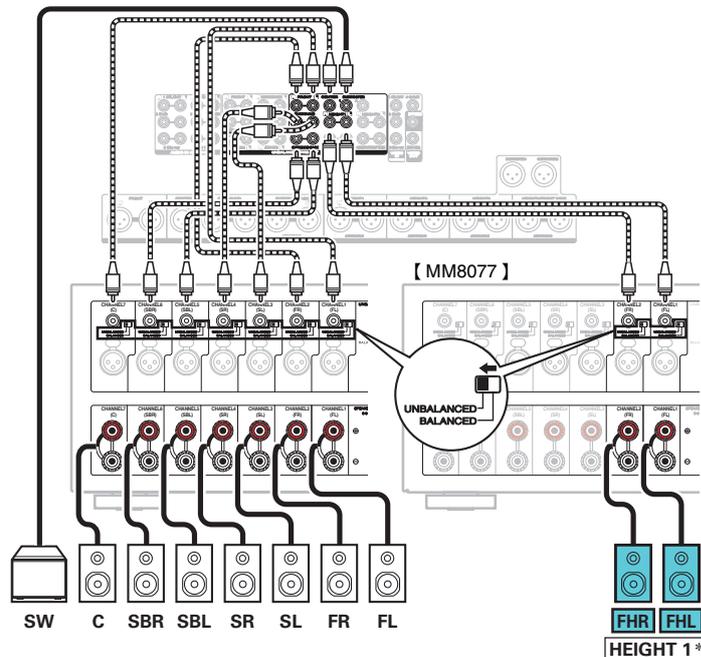
＊ The rear height speakers can be connected instead of the front height speakers. In this case, set the height speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ <u>p. 225</u>)

■ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers

> • Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223)

[Example] UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
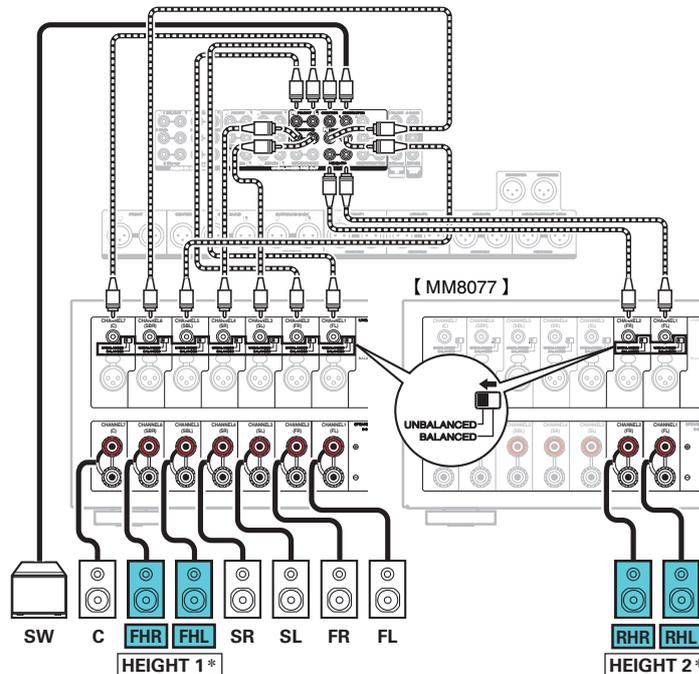
∗ You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

■ Example connection when using one set of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

📝
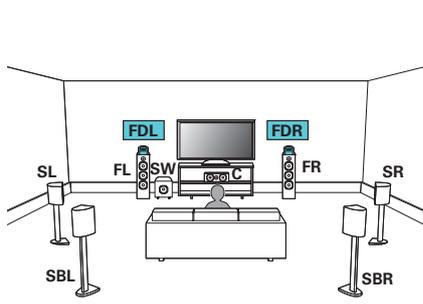
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Dolby Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. ()

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
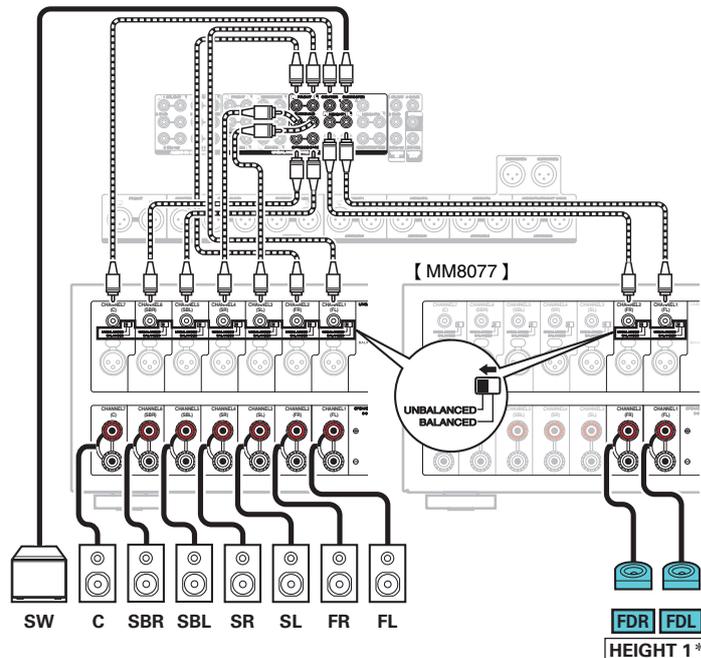
＊ The surround Dolby or back Dolby speakers can be connected instead of the front Dolby speakers. In this case, set the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. ()

■ Example connection when using two sets of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

✎
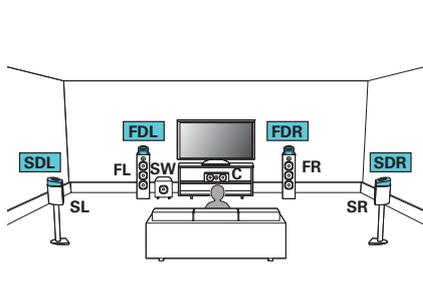
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Dolby Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223, 224)
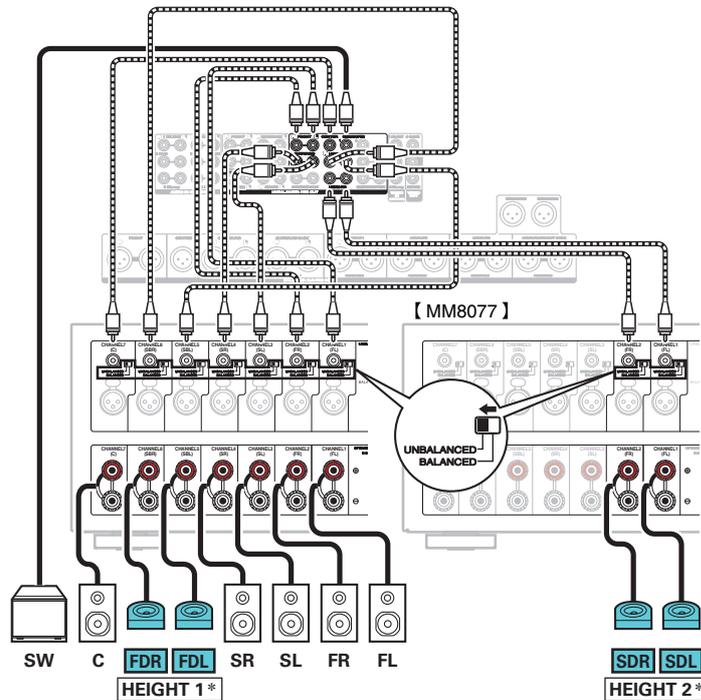
＊ You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

■ Example connection for the Auro-3D 9.1-channel system

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.
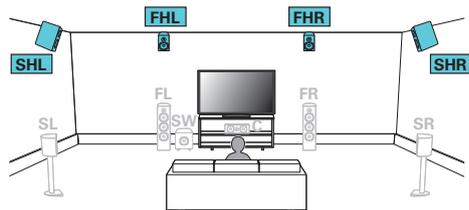
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223)
  Next, set "Height" - "Front Layout" to "Front Height" and "Rear Layout" to "Surr. Height". (☞ p. 226)

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
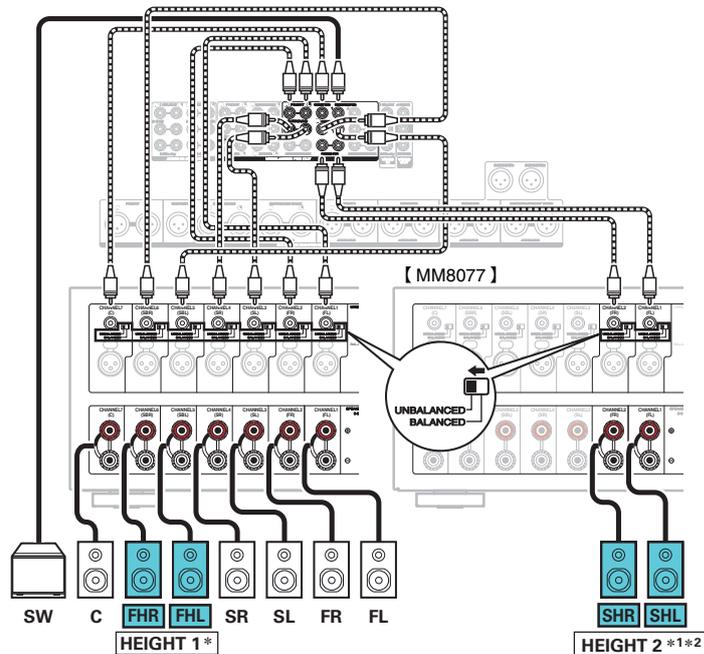
＊1 You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

＊2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Channels output from the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 RCA connectors and HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 XLR connectors can be changed to the following patterns according to the speaker systems being used.

Set this from "Amp Assign" in the menu. (☞ p. 222)

Combination of height speakers to be used			Connected connectors	
Number of height/ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT1 RCA and HEIGHT1 XLR	HEIGHT2 RCA and HEIGHT2 XLR
2 speakers	None	Front Height	Front Height	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-
None	2 speakers	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
		Back Dolby	Back Dolby	-
4 speakers	None	Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
		Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
		Front Height & Rear Height ∗	Front Height	Rear Height
		Front Height & Surr. Height	Front Height	Surr. Height
		Top Front & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear
		Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
		Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height
2 speakers	2 speakers	Front Dolby & Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear
		Front Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height
		Front Height & Surr. Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby
		Top Front & Surr. Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby
None	4 speakers	Front Dolby & Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby

∗ For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Connecting 13.1-channel speakers

■ Example connection when using three sets of ceiling speakers
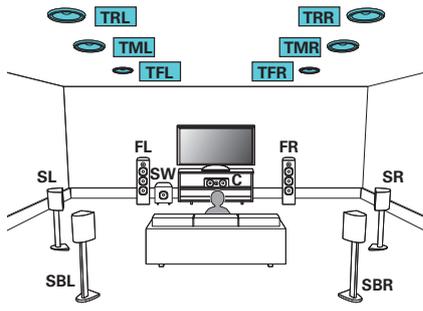
> 🖉
> • Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 224)

【Example】UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
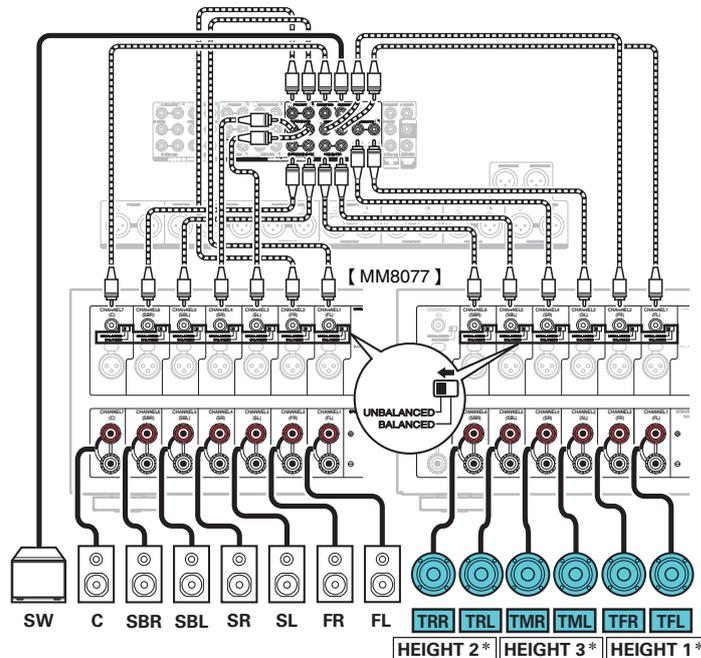
＊You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

■ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers and one set of ceiling speakers
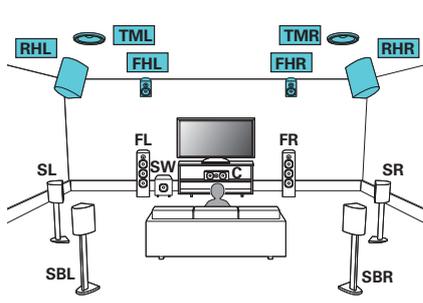
[Example] UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

* Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (p. 224)
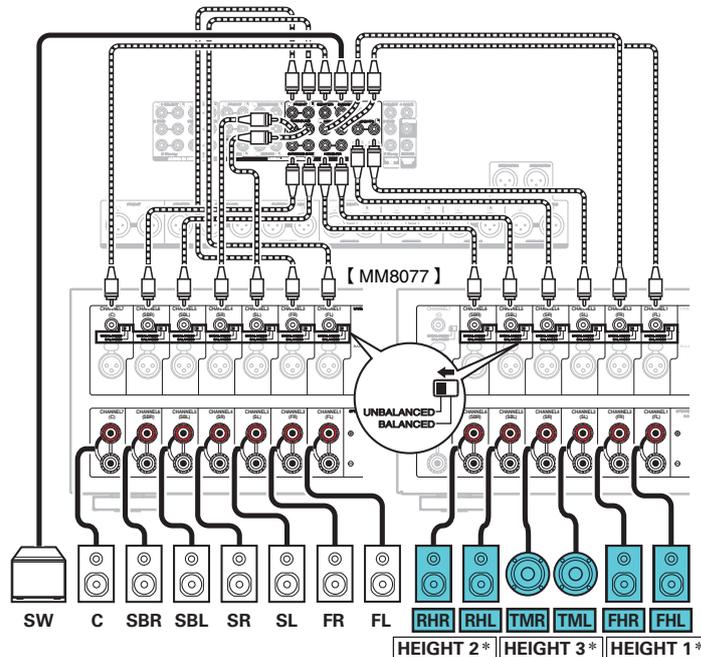
＊ You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (p. 72)

■ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers and one set of front wide speakers

🖊️
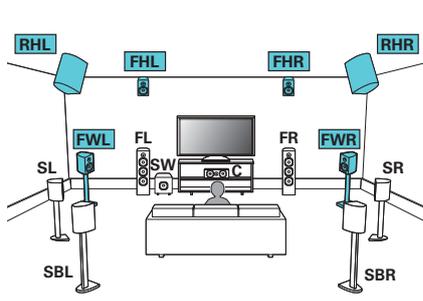
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB & FW" and "Height Sp" to "4ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 223)

[Example] UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
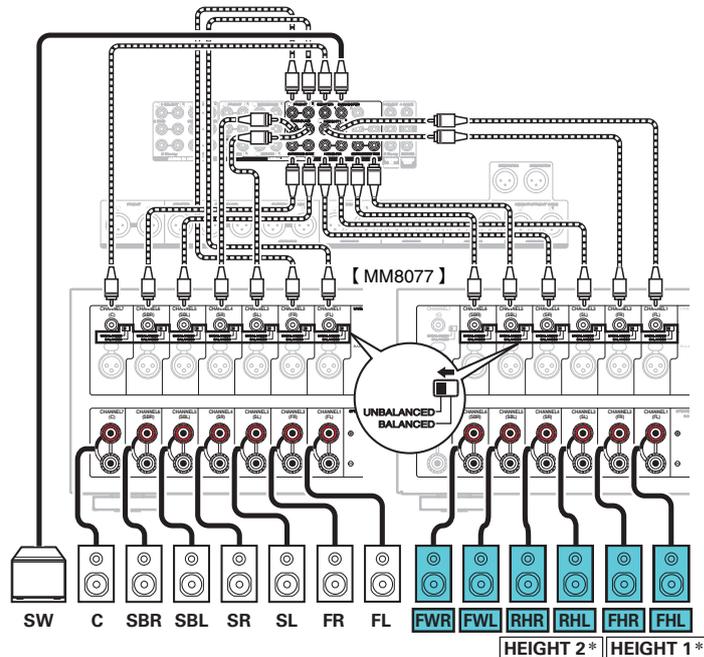
✱ You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

■ Example connection when using three sets of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers
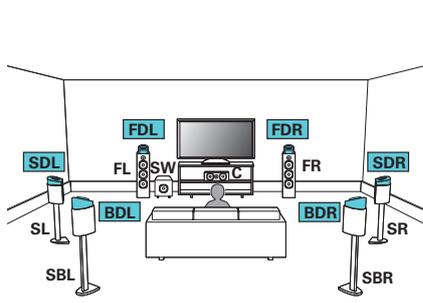
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Dolby Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. ()

[Example] UNBALANCED RCA connector connection

【 MM8077 】

SW C SBR SBL SR SL FR FL

BDR BDL SDR SDL FDR FDL
HEIGHT 2＊ HEIGHT 3＊ HEIGHT 1＊
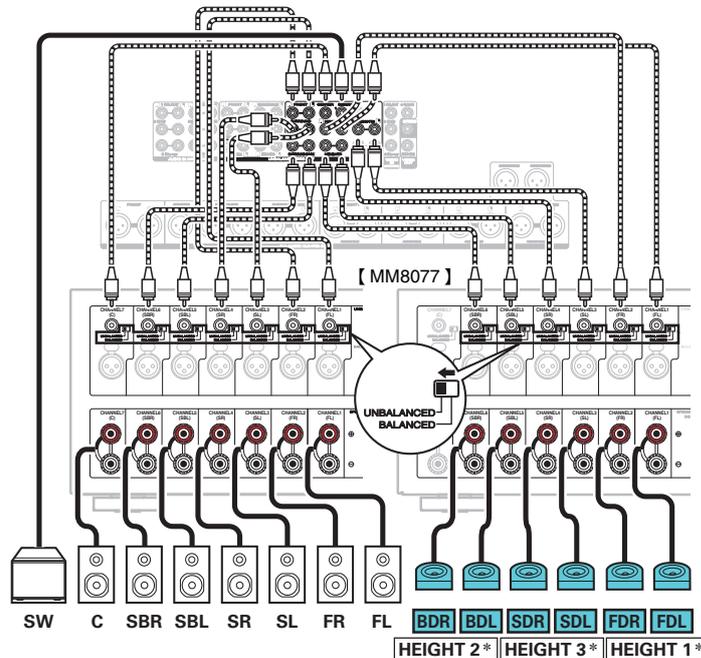
＊ You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. ()

■ Example connection for the Auro-3D 13.1-channel system

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.
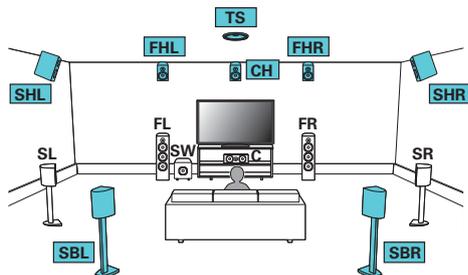
✎
• Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "6ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 224)
Next, set "Height" - "Front Layout" to "Front Height & Center Height" and "Middle Layout" to "Surr. Height & Top Surround". (☞ p. 226)

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
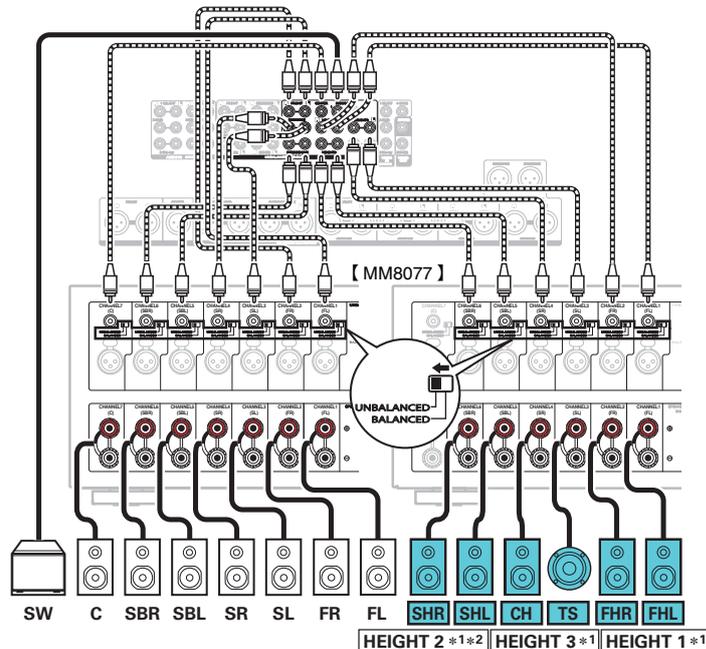
∗1 You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2 and HEIGHT3 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 72)

∗2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Connecting 15.1-channel speakers

This system can connect with up to 15.1-channel speakers and simultaneously play up to 13.1-channels for Dolby Atmos and Auro-3D playback.
Use the Front Height, Top Middle or Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos playback.
Use the Front Height, Rear Height, Center Height or Top Surround speakers for Auro-3D playback.

■ Example connection
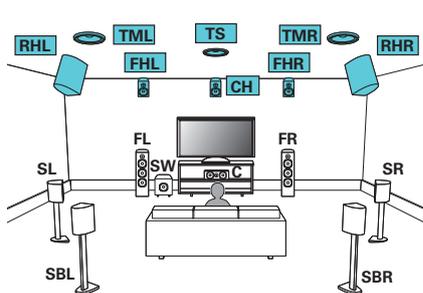
✎
- Set "Floor" - "Layout" to "5ch & SB" and "Height Sp" to "8ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (p. 224)

[Example] UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
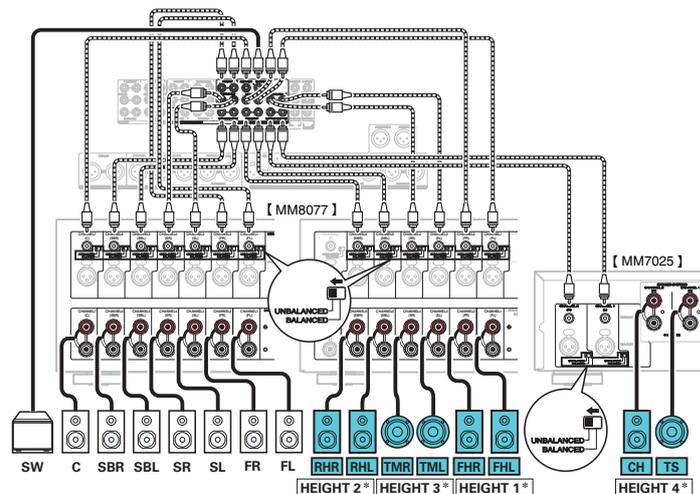
＊Use Surround Height speakers for optimal Auro-3D playback. Install Rear Height speakers instead of Surround Height speakers to enjoy both Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos with 13.1-channel playback.

Combinations of height speakers to be used			Connected pre-out connectors			
Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE*1
2ch	2ch	None	Front Height	Front Height	-	-	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-	-	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-	-	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-	-	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-	-	-
	None	2ch	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-	-	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-	-
		Back Dolby*2	Back Dolby	-	-	-

Combinations of height speakers to be used			Connected pre-out connectors			
Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE*1
4ch	2ch	2ch	Front Dolby & Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear	-	-
		Front Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	-	-
		Front Height & Surr. Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby	-	-
		Front Height & Back Dolby*2	Front Height	Back Dolby	-	-
		Top Front & Surr. Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby	-	-
		Top Front & Back Dolby*2	Top Front	Back Dolby	-	-
	4ch	None	Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle	-	-
		Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear	-	-
		Front Height & Rear Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	-	-
		Front Height & Surr. Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	-	-
		Top Front & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	-	-
		Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height	-	-
		Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	-	-
	None	4ch	Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-
		Front Dolby & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	-	-

Combinations of height speakers to be used				Connected pre-out connectors			
Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern		HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE*1
5ch	5ch	None	Front Height & Rear Height & Top Surround*3	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height & Surr. Height & Top Surround	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height & Rear Height & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Surr. Height & Center Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	R: Center Height	-

Combinations of height speakers to be used			Connected pre-out connectors			
Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE*1
6ch	6ch	None	Front Height & Surr. Height & Rear Height*4	Front Height	Rear Height	Surr. Height	-
			Front Height & Rear Height & Top Surround & Center Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Surr. Height & Top Surround & Center Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height*3*5	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	-
			Top Front & Top Middle & Top Rear*5	Top Front	Top Rear	Top Middle	-
	4ch	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height*3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
			Top Front & Surr. Dolby & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Surround Dolby	-
	2ch	4ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
			Front Dolby & Top Middle & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Top Middle	-
			Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
	None	6ch	Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby & Back Dolby*2	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-

Combinations of height speakers to be used			Connected pre-out connectors			
Number of height / ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE∗1
7ch — 7ch	None	Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height & Top Surround∗3	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround
	None	Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height & Center Height∗3	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	R: Center Height
7ch — 5ch	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height & Top Surround∗3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround
	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height & Center Height∗3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	R: Center Height
8ch — 8ch	None	Front Height & Top Middle & Rear Height & Top Surround & Center Height∗3	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround R: Center Height
8ch — 6ch	2ch	Front Height & Surr. Dolby & Rear Height & Top Surround & Center Height∗3	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround R: Center Height

∗1 Connect to the HEIGHT4/FRONT WIDE RCA connectors or HEIGHT4/FRONT WIDE XLR connectors to use Front Wide speakers. Set "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu to "5ch & FW" or "5ch & SB & FW".

∗2 This combination can be selected when using Surround Back speakers.

∗3 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

∗4 Use 2 sets of Height speakers in the appropriate sound modes for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or Auro-3D playback.
Use the Front Height and Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos or DTS:X playback.
Use the Front Height and Surround Height speakers for Auro-3D playback.

∗5 This combination can be selected when "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu to "5ch" or "5ch & SB". ()

Connecting 11.1-channel speakers: Bi-amp connection of front speakers

This system plays back 11.1-channels. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers. Bi-amp connection is a method to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminal and woofer terminal of a speaker that supports bi-amplification. This connection enables back EMF (power returned without being output) from the woofer to flow into the tweeter without affecting the sound quality, producing a higher sound quality.
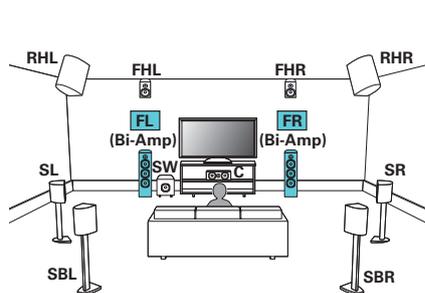
NOTE

- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.

【Example】UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
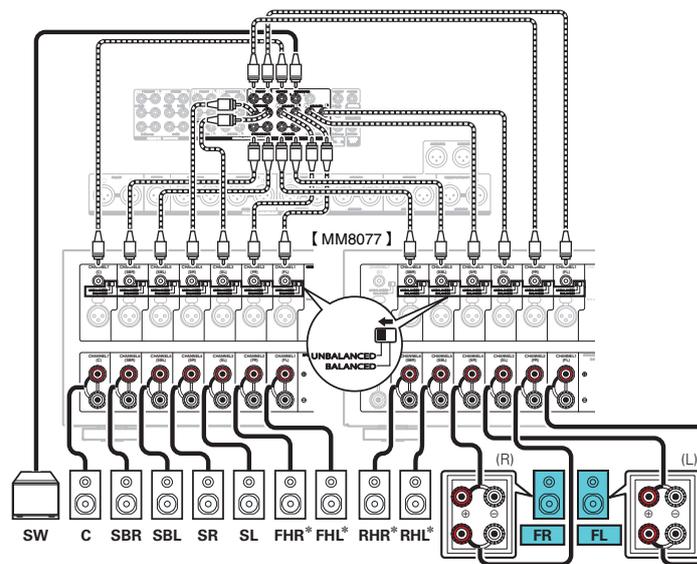
＊ The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 RCA connectors or HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 XLR connectors. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. ()

Connecting 11.1-channel speakers: Second pair of front speakers

This system enables switching playback between front speakers A and B as desired.

【Example】 UNBALANCED RCA connector connection
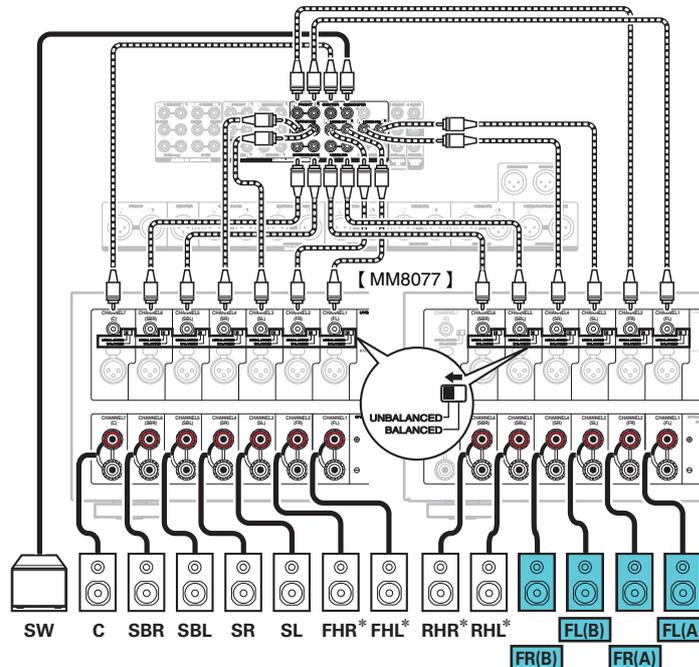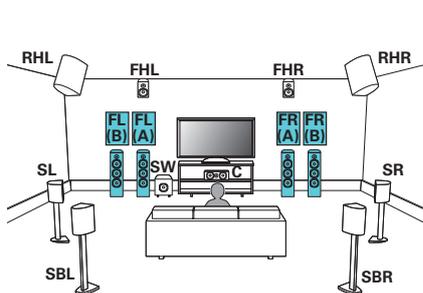
✳ The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 RCA connectors or HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 XLR connectors. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" in the menu. (☞)

Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that the input video is output to the TV. You can also enjoy audio from the TV on this unit.

How to connect a TV depends on the connectors and functions equipped on the TV.

ARC (Audio Return Channel) function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable.

Is the TV equipped with an HDMI connector?

Yes

Is the TV compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) ?

Yes

No

No

"Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)" (vp. 80)

"Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)" (vp. 81)

"Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector" (vp. 82)

Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect a TV that is compatible with the ARC function to this unit.

Set "HDMI Control" to "On" when using a TV that supports the ARC function.

✎

• When using the ARC function, connect to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.

Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect the TV to this unit.

To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.

Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector

Use a component video or a video cable to connect the TV to this unit.

To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.
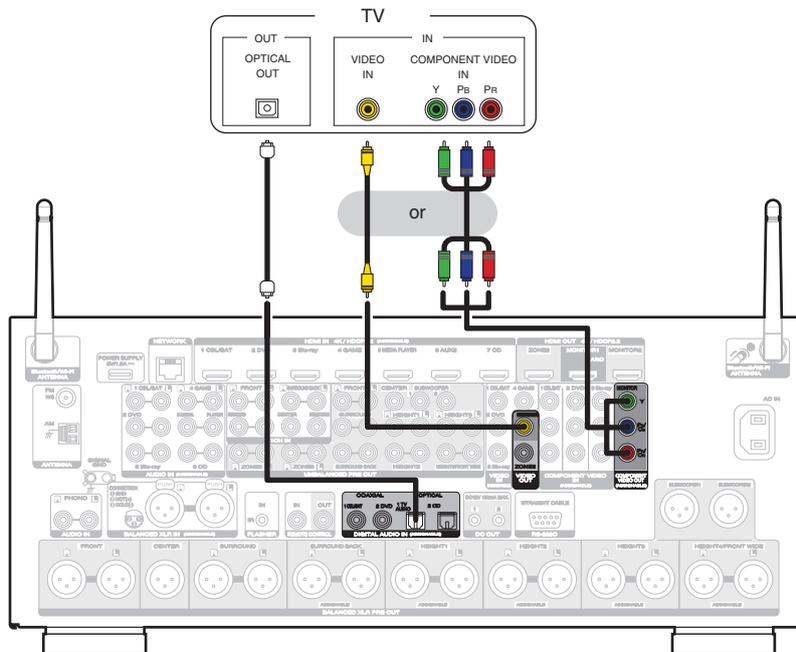
Connecting a playback device

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, component video and composite video) and three types of audio input connectors (HDMI, digital audio and audio).

Select input connectors on this unit according to the connectors equipped on the device you want to connect.

If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections.

In the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable.

- Connect devices to this unit as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
- The source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN, COMPONENT VIDEO IN, VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN connectors can be changed. See "Input Assign" on how to change the input source assigned to the input connectors. (v p. 206)
- To play back audio signals that are input to this unit on a TV connected via HDMI, set in the menu "HDMI Audio Out" to "TV". (v p. 194)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.

❏ Connecting the BALANCED XLR IN connector

This unit is equipped with BALANCED XLR IN connectors. Use these connectors if your device has an XLR connector as an audio output connector.

When using BALANCED XLR IN connectors, assign "XLR" for "Input Assign" – "ANALOG". (☞ p. 207)

By default, these connectors are disabled.

【 AV8805 BALANCED XLR IN connector PIN arrangement 】

① GND (Ground)
② HOT (+)
③ COLD (–)

Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

This explanation uses the connection with a satellite tuner/cable TV STB as an example.
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.
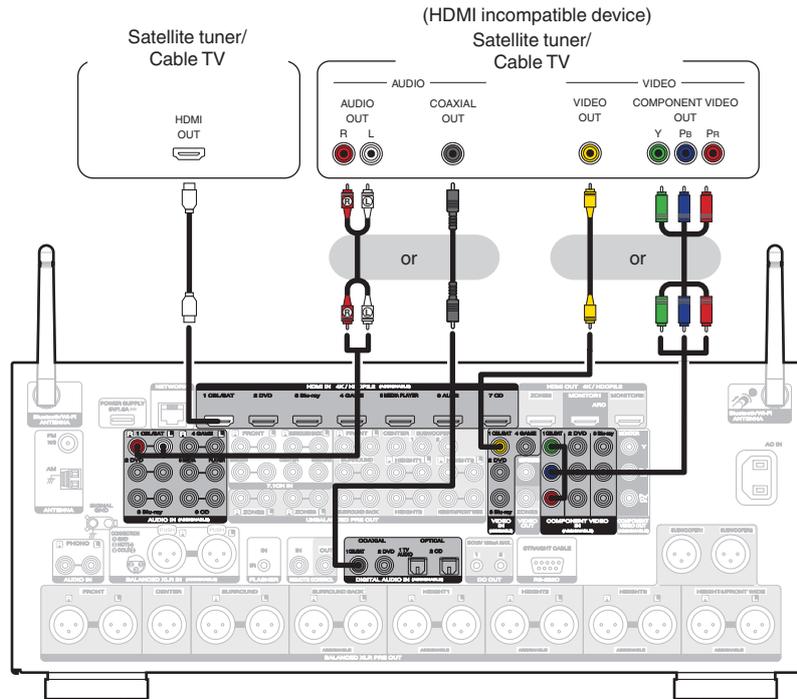
Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player

This explanation uses the connection with a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player as an example.
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.
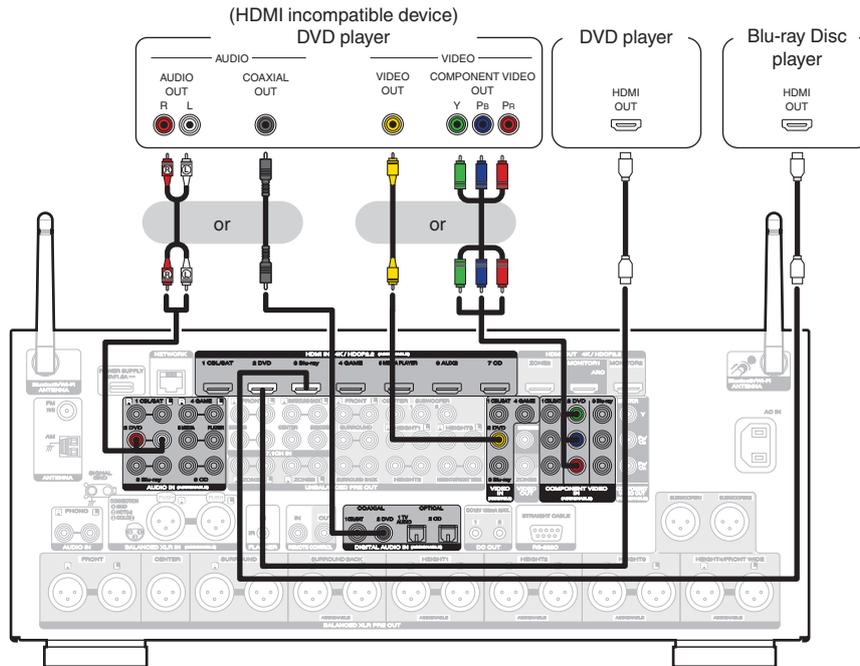
Connecting a video camcorder or game console

This explanation uses the connection with a video camcorders as an example.

Connect a playback device to this unit, such as a video camcorder or game console.
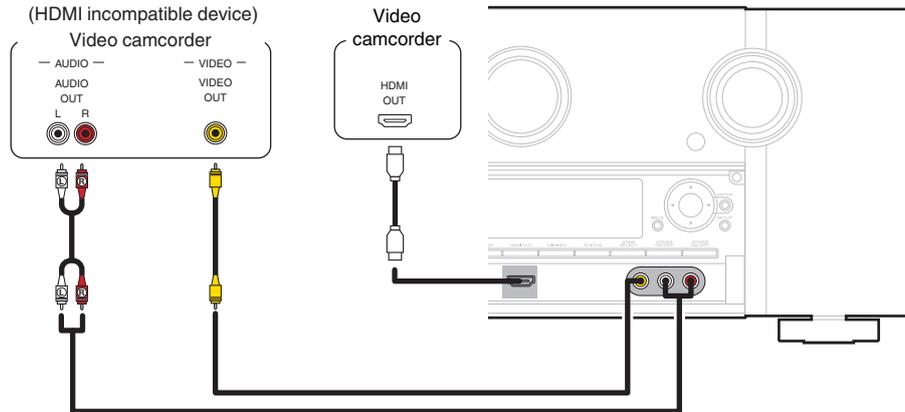
Connecting a turntable

This unit is compatible with turntables equipped with a moving magnet (MM) phono cartridge. When you connect to a turntable with a low output moving coil (MC) cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.

If you set this unit's input source to "Phono" and you accidentally increase the volume without having a turntable connected, you may hear a hum noise from the speakers.

Turntable
(MM cartridge)

AUDIO OUT

GND
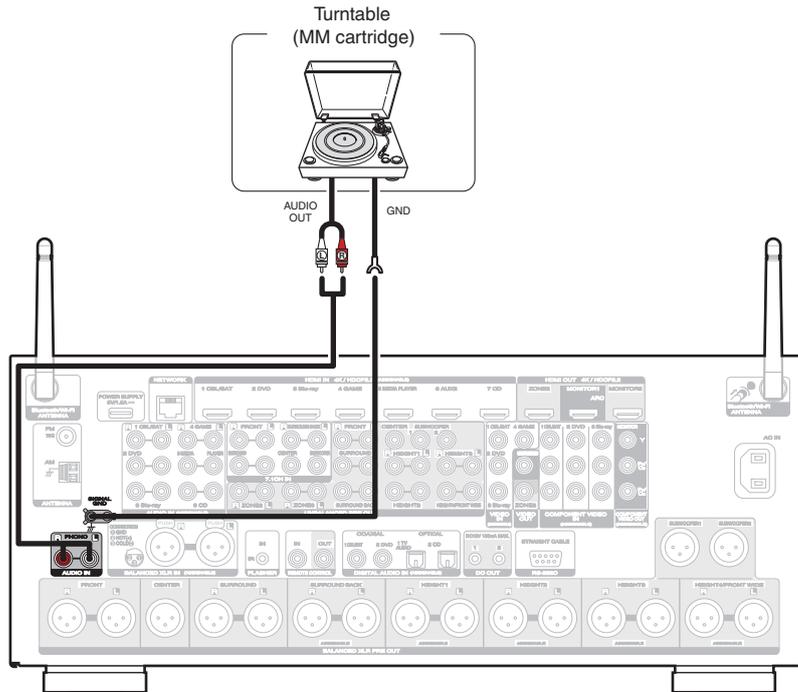
NOTE

- The earth terminal (SIGNAL GND) of this unit is not for safety grounding purposes. If this terminal is connected when there is a lot of noise, the noise can be reduced. Note that depending on the turntable, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.

Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector

You can connect this unit to an external device fitted with multi-channel sound audio output connectors to enjoy music and video.

To play analog signals input from 7.1CH IN connectors, set "Input Mode" to "7.1CH IN". (☞)
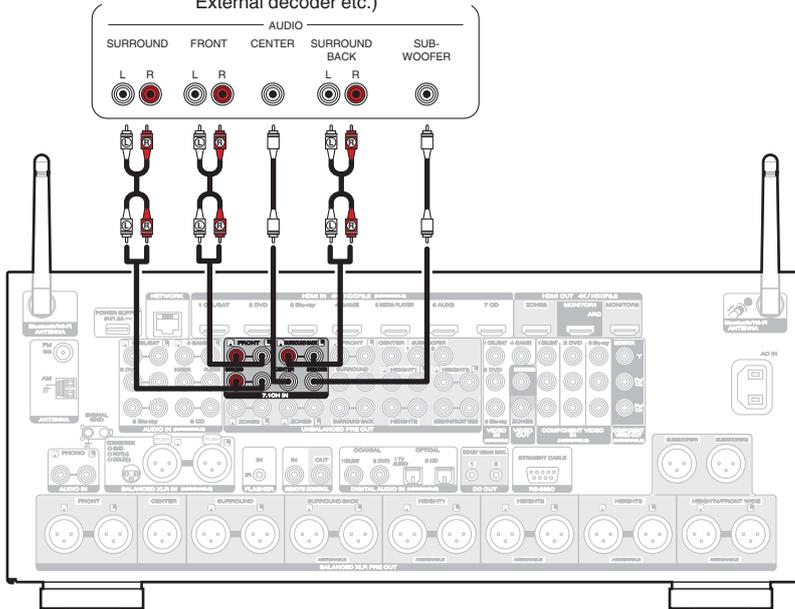
- The video signal can be connected in the same way as a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player. (☞)

Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port

Connect to the USB port on the front panel of this device to play music files saved to a USB memory device.

For operating instructions see "Playing a USB memory device" (☞).
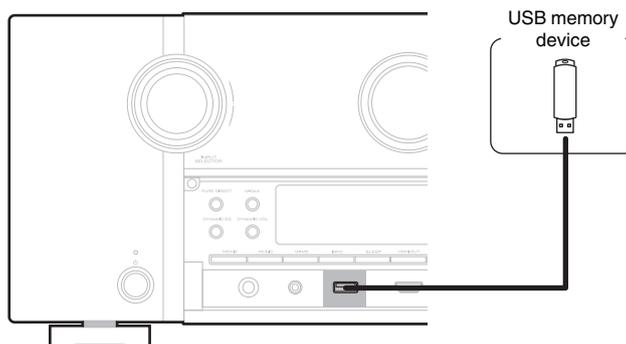
USB memory device

- Marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB hard disk drive (HDD) which came with an AC adapter, use that device's supplied AC adapter.
- The USB port on the rear panel can only be used to supply power (5 V/1.5 A). It cannot be used to play music files. (☞)

NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit's USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.

Connecting an FM/AM antenna

Connect the antenna, tune in to a broadcast and then move the antenna to the location where there is least noise. Then use tape, etc. to fix the antenna in this location. ("Listening to FM/AM broadcasts" (☞ p. 110))

✎

- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

NOTE

- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.

AM loop antenna
(supplied)

FM indoor antenna
(supplied)

Black

White
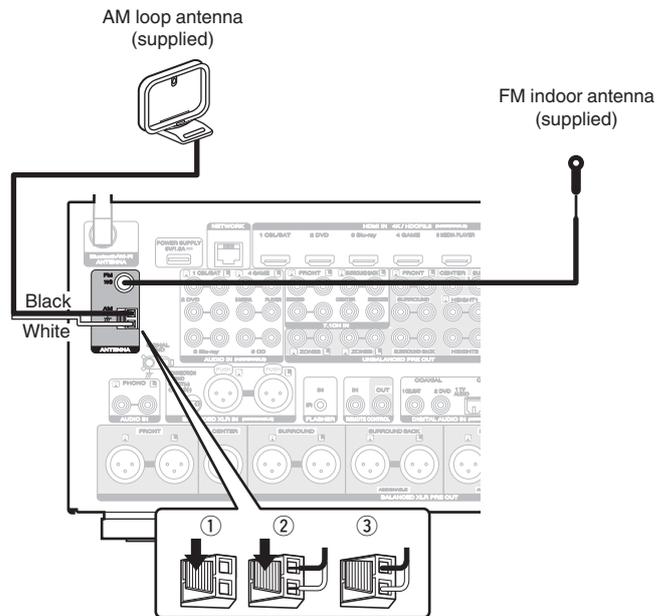
■ Using the AM loop antenna

Suspending on a wall

Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.
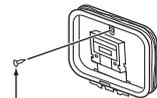
Nail, tack, etc.

Standing alone

Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

When assembling, refer to "AM loop antenna assembly".
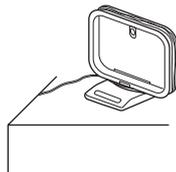
■ AM loop antenna assembly

1 Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.

2 Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.

Stand
Square hole
Loop antenna
Projecting part
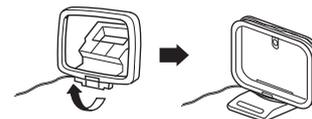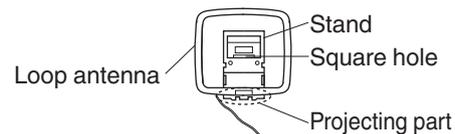
Connecting to a home network (LAN)

This unit can connect to a network using a wired LAN or wireless LAN.

You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to enable various types of playback and operations as described below.

- Playback of network audio such as Internet Radio and from your media server(s)
- Playback of streaming music services
- Using the Apple AirPlay function
- Operation on this unit via the network
- Operation with the HEOS wireless multi-room sound system
- Firmware Update

For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.

Wired LAN

To make connections via wired LAN, use a LAN cable to connect the router to this unit as shown in the figure below.
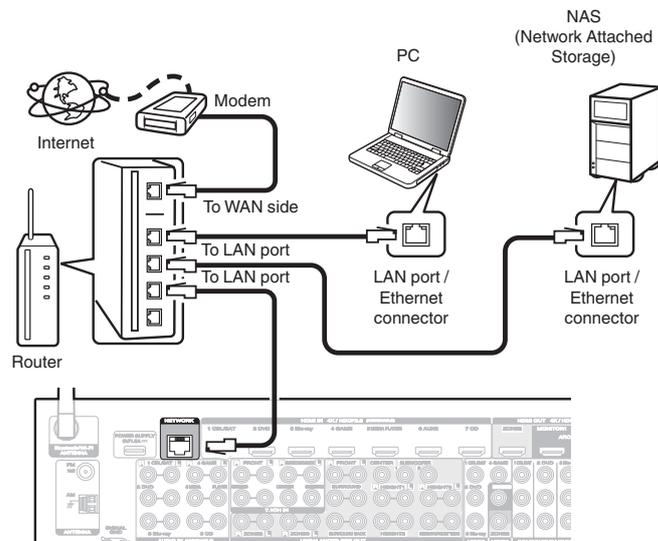
Wireless LAN

When connecting to the network via wireless LAN, connect the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity connection to the rear panel and stand them upright.

See "Wi-Fi Setup" on how to connect to a wireless LAN router.
(☞ p. 244)

Internet

Modem

To WAN side

Router with access point

✏
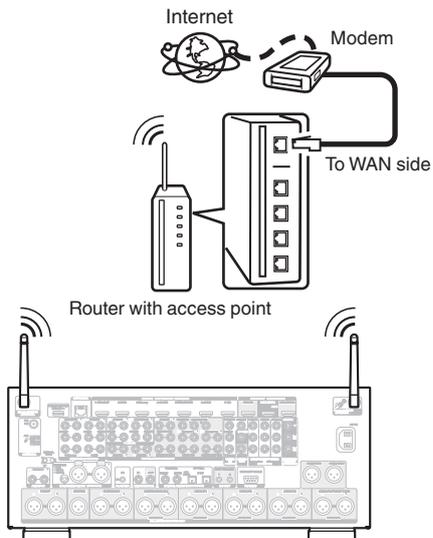
- When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:
  - Built-in DHCP server
    This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
  - Built-in 100BASE-TX switch
    When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.
- Only use a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable (readily available at electronics stores). (CAT-5 or greater recommended)
- The normal shielded-type LAN cable is recommended.
  If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.
- When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, configure the IP address, etc. in "Network". (☞ p. 243)

NOTE

- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact your ISP or a computer shop for details.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE compatible router is required if your contracted line is not set using PPPoE.
- Do not connect a NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port / Ethernet connector on your computer.
- Various online services may be discontinued without prior notice.

Connecting an external control device

REMOTE CONTROL jacks

■ Performing operations by RC on this unit without visual contact

You can connect an external IR receiver to the REMOTE CONTROL connectors to perform operations on this unit with the supplied remote control unit without visual contact. This might be necessary if the unit is hidden in a cupboard or corner, so you can't directly point with the remote control unit to the device.

To do this, disable the remote control signal receiving function ("Remote lock function" (☞ p. 167)).

NOTE

- When the remote control signal receiving function is disabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

■ Remotely connecting Marantz devices

When you are using a Marantz device other than this unit that supports remote connection, you can transmit remote control signals just by connecting the device to the REMOTE CONTROL IN/OUT connector with a monaural cable.

Set the remote control switch located on the rear panel of the connected audio component to "EXTERNAL" or "EXT." to use this feature.

DC OUT jacks

When a device with DC IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit.

The DC OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V DC/150 mA electrical signal.

12 V DC/150 mA trigger-compatible device
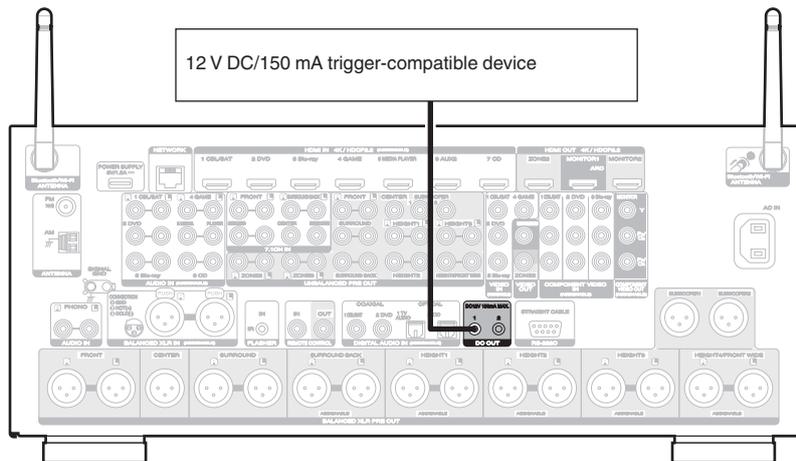
NOTE

- Use a monaural mini-plug cable for connecting the DC OUT jacks. Do not use a stereo mini-plug cable.
- If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V DC/150 mA, or has shorted, the DC OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.

Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.

Power cord (supplied)

To household power outlet
(AC 120 V, 60 Hz)

■ Contents

Basic operation

Playback a device

Playback network audio/service

Convenience functions

Other functions

Basic operation

POWER ⏻

Input source select buttons

MUTE 🔇✕

VOLUME ▲▼

Turning the power on

1 **Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

✎

- You can press the input source select button when the unit is in standby mode to turn on the power.
- You can also switch the power to standby by pressing ⏻ on the main unit.

Selecting the input source

1 **Press the input source select button to be played back.**

The desired input source can be selected directly.

✎

- You can also select the input source by turning INPUT SELECTOR on the main unit.

Adjusting the volume

1 **Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.**

🖉

- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.
- You can also adjust the master volume by turning VOLUME on the main unit.

Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

1 **Press MUTE ◁✕.**

- "MUTE" appears on the display.
- ◁✕ appears on the TV screen.

🖉

- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" in the menu. (🖅 p. 186)
- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE ◁✕ again.

Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player

The following describes the procedure for playing DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player.

1 **Prepare for playback.**

① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.

2 **Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

3 **Press DVD or Blu-ray to switch an input source for a player used for playback.**

4 **Play the DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player.**

■ **Surround playback (🖅 p. 145)**

Playing a USB memory device
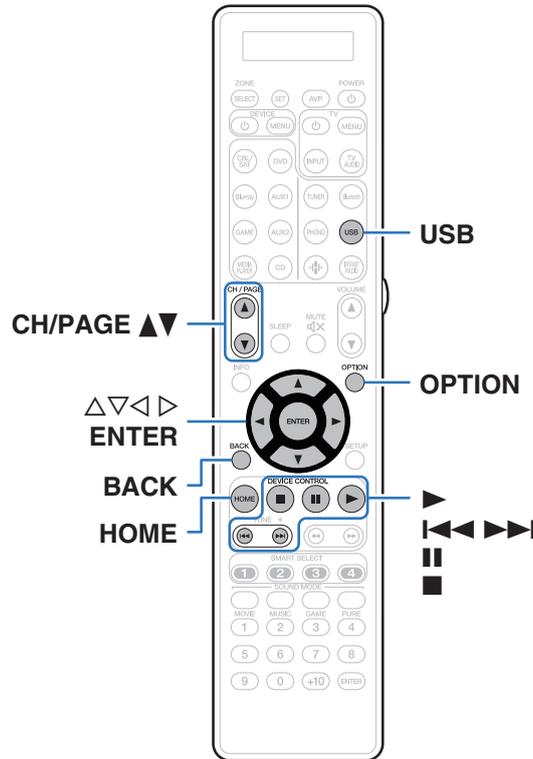
- Playing back music files stored on a USB memory device.
- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in "FAT16" or "FAT32" format.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  See "Playing back a USB memory devices" (☞ p. 306) for details.

  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **WAV**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**
  - **FLAC**
  - **Apple Lossless**
  - **DSD**

USB

CH/PAGE △▽

△▽◁▷

ENTER

OPTION

BACK

HOME

▶

◄◄ ►►

❚❚

■

Playing files stored on USB memory devices

1 **Insert a USB memory device into the USB port.**

2 **Press USB to switch the input source to "USB".**

3 **Select the name of this unit.**

4 **Browse the music on your USB memory device and select something to play.**

🖉

- When you select something to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

Play Now:	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Now & Replace Queue:	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Next:	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
Add to End of Queue:	Adds the item to the end of the queue.

5 **Use △▽ to select the "Play Now" or "Play Now & Replace Queue", then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

NOW PLAYING

Nature

Nature 01 – Various Artists

2:45   –2:21

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE ▲ ▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen

🖉

- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.

NOTE

- Note that Marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.

■ **Operations accessible through the option menu**

Listening to music on a Bluetooth device

POWER ⏻

Bluetooth

OPTION

BACK

▶
⏮ ⏭
Ⅱ
■
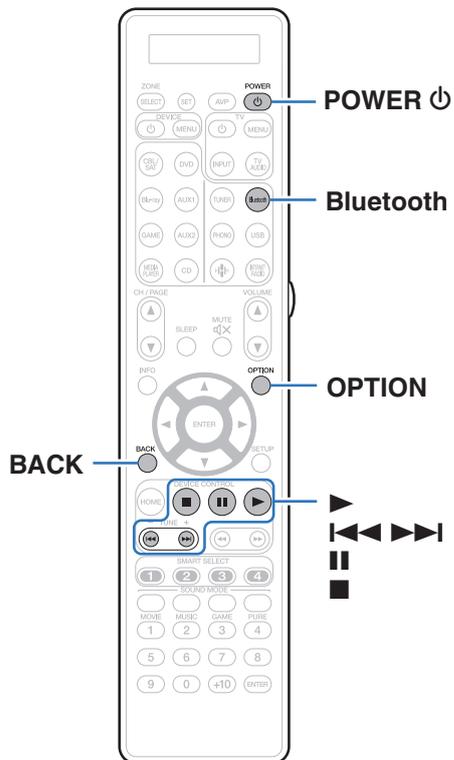
Music files stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones, digital music players, etc. can be enjoyed on this unit by pairing and connecting this unit with the Bluetooth device.

Communication is possible up to a range of about 98.4 ft/30 m.

NOTE

0 To play back music from a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth device needs to support the A2DP profile.

Playing music from Bluetooth device

In order to enjoy music from a Bluetooth device on this unit, the Bluetooth device must first be paired with this unit.
Once the Bluetooth device has been paired, it does not need to be paired again.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Connect the supplied external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity to the Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors on the rear panel. (p. 27)
② Press POWER Ⓞ to turn on power to the unit.

2 Press Bluetooth.

When using for the first time, the unit will go into the pairing mode automatically and "Pairing..." will appear on the display of the unit.

3 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

4 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

Connect to the Bluetooth device while "Pairing" is being displayed on the display of the unit.
Perform the connection with the Bluetooth device close to the unit (about 3.3 ft/1 m).

5 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.

- The Bluetooth device can also be operated with the remote control of this unit.
- The next time the Bluetooth button is pressed on the remote control unit, this unit automatically connects to the last Bluetooth device that was connected.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
◄◄ ►►◄	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track

- Press STATUS on this unit during playback to switch the display between Title name, Artist name, Album name, etc.

Pairing with other Bluetooth devices

Pair a Bluetooth device with this unit.

1 **Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.**

2 **Press and hold Bluetooth on the remote control unit for at least 3 seconds.**

This unit will go into the pairing mode.

3 **Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.**

- This unit can be paired with a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. When a 9th Bluetooth device is paired, it will be registered in place of the oldest registered device.
- You can also enter pairing mode by pressing the OPTION button when the Bluetooth playback screen is displayed and selecting "Pairing Mode" from the displayed option menu.

NOTE

- To operate the Bluetooth device with the remote control of this unit, the Bluetooth device needs to support the AVRCP profile.
- The remote control of this unit is not guaranteed to work with all Bluetooth devices.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device, this unit outputs audio that is coupled to the volume setting on the Bluetooth device.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- "Pairing with other Bluetooth devices" (ᐯ p. 108)
- "Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)" (ᐯ p. 139)
- "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" (ᐯ p. 140)
- "Adjusting the tone (Tone)" (ᐯ p. 141)
- "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (ᐯ p. 142)
- "Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)" (ᐯ p. 144)

Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device

After pairing is completed, the Bluetooth device can be connected without performing any operations on this unit.

This operation also needs to be performed when switching the Bluetooth device for playback.

1 **If a Bluetooth device is currently connected, deactivate the Bluetooth setting of that device to disconnect it.**

2 **Activate the Bluetooth setting of the Bluetooth device to be connected.**

3 **Select this unit from the Bluetooth device list on your Bluetooth device.**

4 **Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.**

- The screen automatically switches to the "Bluetooth" playback screen if a Bluetooth device is connected while the power of this unit is on.
- When the "Network Control" setting of this unit is set to "Always On" and a Bluetooth device is connected with the unit in the standby state, the power of the unit will be turned on automatically. (☞ p. 248)

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts

You can use the built-in tuner of this unit to listen to FM broadcasts and AM broadcasts.
Make sure the FM antenna and AM loop antenna are connected to this unit first.

TUNER

CH/PAGE ▲▼

△▽◁ ▷
ENTER

BACK

TUNE +, –

0 – 9
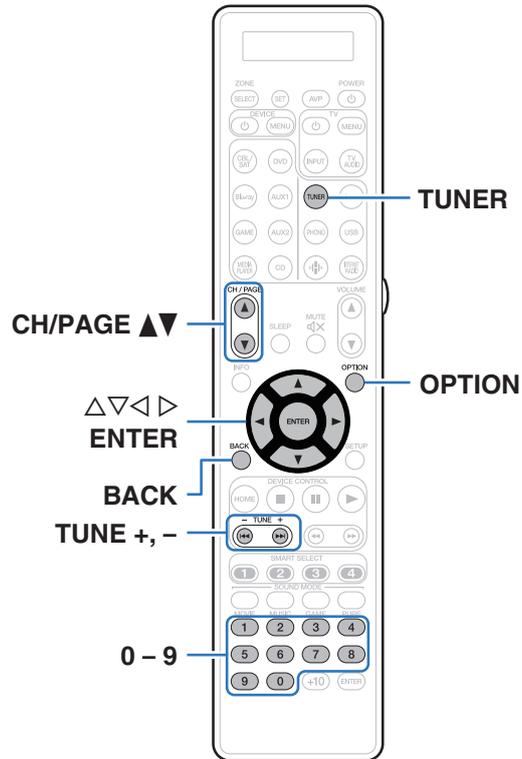
OPTION

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts

1 Connect the antenna. ("Connecting an FM/AM antenna" (⟨⟩ p. 91))

2 Press TUNER to switch the input source to "Tuner".

【 TV screen 】

```
 📻 Tuner

                              STEREO AUTO
                              Now Playing

 CH 1          📶 FM 92.10MHz



 📻 Tune      📻 Preset    OPTION Option
```

【 Display of this unit 】

```
01 FM
  9210MHz
```
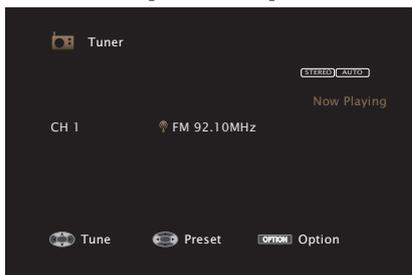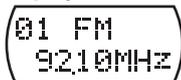
3 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

4 Use △▽ to select "FM/AM", then press ENTER.

This displays the reception band input screen.

5 Use ◁ ▷ to select "FM" or "AM", then press ENTER.

FM:	When listening to an FM broadcast.
AM:	When listening to an AM broadcast.

6 Press TUNE + or TUNE – to select the station you want listen to.

Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.

✎

- The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of "Auto" mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and "Manual" mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is "Auto". You can also use "Direct Tune" to tune in by entering the frequency directly.
  In "Auto" mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the "Manual" mode or "Direct Tune" mode to tune in.

Operation buttons	Function
TUNE +, –	Selects the radio station (up/down)
CH/PAGE △▼	Selects preset radio stations
△▽	Selects the radio station (up/down)
◁▷	Selects preset radio stations
0 – 9	Preset channel selection / Direct frequency tuning

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)

You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

1 Press OPTION when the input source is "Tuner".

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 Use △▽ to select "Direct Tune", then press ENTER.

The screen that lets you enter the frequency is displayed.

3 Use △▽ or 0 – 9 to select a number and press ▷.

- If ◁ is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.

4 Repeat step 3 and enter the frequency of the radio station you want to hear.

5 When setting is completed, press ENTER.

The preset frequency is tuned in.

Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)

You can change the mode for tuning into FM and AM broadcasts. If you cannot tune in automatically with "Auto" mode, change the mode to "Manual" and tune in manually.

1 Press OPTION when the input source is "Tuner".

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 Use △▽ to select "Tune Mode", then press ENTER.

3 Use ◁ ▷ to select the tune mode, then press ENTER.

Auto:	Automatically search for and tune to a receivable radio station.
Manual:	Manually change the frequency one step at a time each time the button is pressed.

Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)

A maximum of 56 radio stations can be automatically preset.

1 Press OPTION when the input source is "Tuner".

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 Use △▽ to select "Auto Preset Memory", then press ENTER.

3 Press ENTER.

The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.

- When presetting is completed, "Completed" is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.

🖉

- The preset memory is overwritten.

Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)

Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily.
Up to 56 stations can be preset.

1 **Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset.**
("Listening to FM/AM broadcasts" (⯈ **p. 111))**

2 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

3 **Use △▽ to select "Preset Memory", then press ENTER.**

The list of already preset channels is displayed.

4 **Use △▽ or 0 – 9 to select the channel you want to preset, then press ENTER.**

The current broadcast station that is preset.

- To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Channel	Default settings
1 – 8	92.10 / 92.30 / 92.50 / 92.70 / 93.10 / 93.50 / 93.70 / 94.10 MHz
9 – 16	94.30 / 94.50 / 94.70 / 94.90 / 95.10 / 95.30 / 95.50 / 95.70 MHz
17 – 24	98.10 / 98.30 / 98.50 / 98.70 / 98.90 / 99.10 / 100.10 / 100.30 MHz
25 – 32	100.50 / 100.70 / 100.90 / 101.10 / 101.30 / 101.50 / 101.70 / 101.90 MHz
33 – 40	103.10 / 103.30 / 103.50 / 103.70 / 103.90 / 104.10 / 104.30 / 104.50 MHz
41 – 48	104.70 / 104.90 / 105.10 / 105.30 / 105.50 / 105.70 / 105.90 / 106.10 MHz
49 – 56	106.30 / 106.50 / 106.70 / 106.90 / 107.10 / 107.30 / 107.50 / 107.90 MHz

Listening to preset stations

1 **Use CH/PAGE △▽ or 0 – 9 to select the desired preset channel.**

Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)

You can set the name to the preset broadcast station or change it. Up to 8 characters can be input.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is "Tuner".**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select "Preset Name", then press ENTER.**

The "Preset Name" screen is displayed.

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name.**

4 **Use △▽ to select the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.**

5 **Use △▽ to select a name label, then press ENTER.**

The screen that lets you edit the Preset Name is displayed.

- If you select "Set Defaults", then the unit returns to displaying the frequency.

6 **Enter the characters, then press "OK".**

7 **Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.**

Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)

Perform auto preset memory to save all the broadcasting stations that can be received in the memory. Selecting a broadcast station becomes easier by skipping unnecessary memories.

1   Press OPTION when the input source is "Tuner".

The option menu screen is displayed.

2   Use △▽ to select "Preset Skip", then press ENTER.

The "Preset Skip" screen is displayed.

3   ❏ To set the stations you want to skip by groups

① Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.

② Press △ to select "Set No.＊ – ＊ to Skip", then press ENTER.
Skip all the broadcast stations that are included in the selected group "＊-＊".
(＊ is the selected group number.)

❏ To set the stations you want to skip by stations

① Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.

② Use △▽ to select the broadcast station you want to skip.

③ Use ◁ ▷ to select "Skip".
The station you selected is not displayed.

4   Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.

Cancelling Preset Skip

1 While the "Preset Skip" screen is displayed, use ◁ ▷ to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.

2 Use △▽ to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.

3 Use ◁ ▷ to select "On".

The skip is cancelled.

NOTE

- "Preset Skip" cannot be cancelled for groups.

Listening to Internet Radio
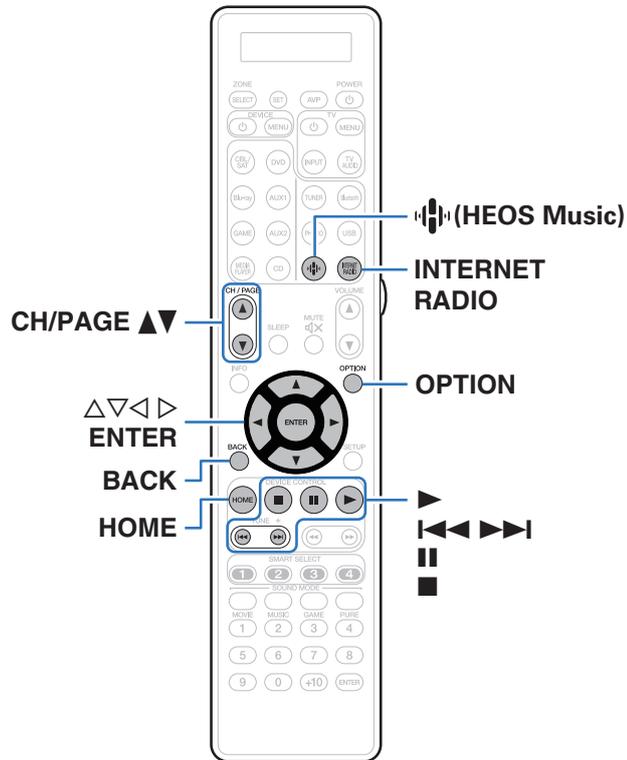
- Internet Radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet Radio stations from around the world can be received.
- The Internet Radio station list on this unit the database service provided by TuneIn Radio service.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  See "Playing back Internet Radio" (☞ p. 309) for details.

- **WMA**
- **MP3**
- **MPEG-4 AAC**

ᐧ▯ᐧ(HEOS Music)

CH/PAGE ▲▼

△▽◁ ▷
ENTER
BACK
HOME

INTERNET RADIO

OPTION

► ◄◄ ►►|

Ⅱ

■

Listening to Internet Radio

1 **Press INTERNET RADIO.**

- You can also press ♬ (HEOS Music). Use △▽ to select "TuneIn Internet Radio", then press ENTER.

2 **Select the station you want to play.**

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
‖ *	Pause
■	Stop
◄◄ ►►| *	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE △▽	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen

∗ Enabled when playing Podcasts.

✎

- The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.

NOTE

- The radio station database service may be suspended or be otherwise unavailable without notice.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- "Adding to HEOS Favorites" (⟨⟩ p. 138)
- "Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)" (⟨⟩ p. 139)
- "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" (⟨⟩ p. 140)
- "Adjusting the tone (Tone)" (⟨⟩ p. 141)
- "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (⟨⟩ p. 142)
- "Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)" (⟨⟩ p. 144)

Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS
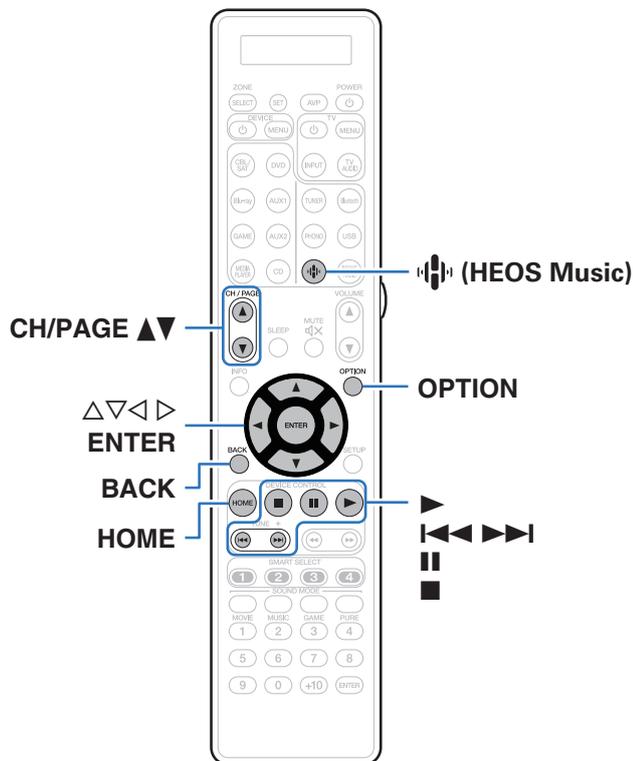
- This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) from DLNA compatible servers including PCs and NAS devices on your network.
- Supported file formats:
  For details, see "Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS" (☞).

  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **WAV**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**
  - **FLAC**
  - **Apple Lossless**
  - **DSD**

(HEOS Music)

CH/PAGE △▽

$\triangle\triangledown\triangleleft\triangleright$
ENTER

OPTION

BACK

HOME

►
I◀◀ ▶▶I
II
■

Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS

Use this procedure to play music files or playlists stored on DLNA files servers on your local network.

1 Press ◆ (HEOS Music).

2 Use △▽ to select "Music Servers", then press ENTER.

MUSIC

♪

TuneIn Internet Radio

HEOS Favorites

Music Servers

USB Music

3 Select the name of your networked PC or NAS (Network Attached Storage) server.

4 Browse the music on your PC/NAS and select something to play.

🖉

- When you select something to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

Play Now:	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Now & Replace Queue:	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Next:	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
Add to End of Queue:	Adds the item to the end of the queue.

Music Servers – Live

Live 01

Play Now

Play Now & Replace Queue

Play Next

Add to End of Queue

Cancel

Live 05
Various Artists

5 **Use △▽ to select the "Play Now" or "Play Now & Replace Queue", then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

NOW PLAYING

Live

Live 01 – Various Artists

2:45   -2:21

🔀 🔁 ⏮ ⏸ ⏭   ≣

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
⏸	Pause
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE ▲ ▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen

🖉

- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.
- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.

NOTE

- When playing back music files with your PC or NAS connected through wireless LAN, audio may be interrupted depending on your wireless LAN environment. In this case, connect using a wired LAN.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- "Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)" (☞ p. 139)
- "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" (☞ p. 140)
- "Adjusting the tone (Tone)" (☞ p. 141)
- "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (☞ p. 142)
- "Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)" (☞ p. 144)

Getting the HEOS App

You can use many online music streaming services from the HEOS App. Depending upon your geographical location, there are several options to choose from.

Download the HEOS App for iOS or Android by searching App Store, Google Play store or Amazon Appstore for "HEOS".

HEOS Account

HEOS Accounts can be registered in "HEOS Account" (☞) in the menu of this unit or by tapping "Music" tab - "Settings" icon ⚙ in the HEOS App.

■ What is a HEOS Account?

A HEOS Account is master account or "keychain" for managing all of your HEOS music services with one single username and password.

■ Why do I need a HEOS Account?

With the HEOS Account you just have to enter your music services login names and passwords one time. This allows you to easily and quickly use multiple controller apps on different devices.

You just log into your HEOS Account on any device and you will have access to all of your associated music services, play history and custom playlists, even if you are at a friend's house listening to music on their HEOS system.

■ Signing up for a HEOS Account

You will be instructed to signup for a HEOS Account the first time you try to access any music service from the main "Music" menu of the HEOS App.

■ Changing your HEOS Account

1 **Tap the "Music" tab.**

2 **Select the Settings icon ⚙ in the upper left corner of the screen.**

3 **Select "HEOS Account".**

4 **Change your location, change your password, delete your account or sign out of your account.**

Playing from streaming music services

A music service is an online music company that provides access to vast music collections via free and/or paid subscriptions. Depending upon your geographical location, there are several options to choose from.

■ Selecting a room/device

1   **Tap the "Rooms" tab, and select "AV8805" if there are multiple HEOS devices.**

- Tap the Pencil icon 🖉 at the top right to switch edit mode. You can change the displayed name.
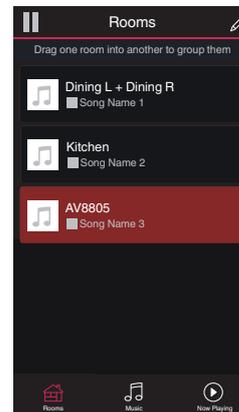
■ Selecting the music track or station from music sources

1 **Tap the "Music" tab and select a music source.**

✎
- All music services displayed may not be available in your location.
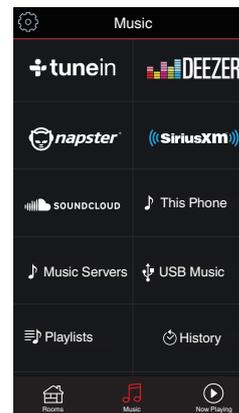
2 Browse the music to play.

After selecting a music track or radio station the app will automatically change to the "Now Playing" screen.

✎

- When you select a music track to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

Play Now:	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Now & Replace Queue:	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Next:	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
Add to End of Queue:	Adds the item to the end of the queue.

✎

- When you select a radio station the following items are displayed.

Play Now:	Plays the selected item immediately.
Add to HEOS Favorites:	Adds to HEOS Favorites.
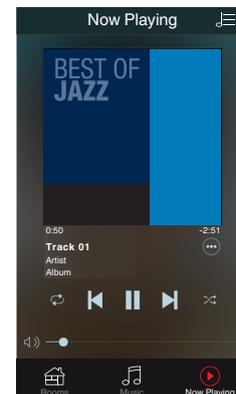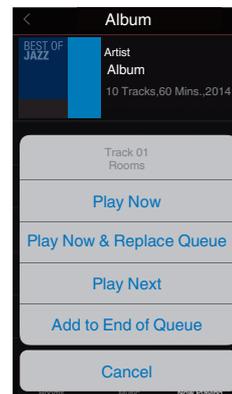
Listening to the same music in multiple rooms

The HEOS system is a true multi-room audio system that automatically synchronizes audio playback between multiple HEOS devices so that the audio coming from different rooms is perfectly in sync and always sounds amazing! You can easily add up to 32 HEOS devices to your HEOS system. You can join or group up to 16 individual HEOS devices into a group of HEOS devices that function as if they were a single HEOS device.

■ Grouping rooms

1 Press and hold your finger on room that is not playing music.

2 Drag it into the room that is playing music (indicated by the red outline) and lift your finger.

3 The two rooms will be grouped together into a single device group and both rooms will be playing the same music in perfect sync.

✎
• When audio from the device connected to this unit is played back in a group, only 2-channel PCM input from the HDMI, digital or analog terminals can be played back.
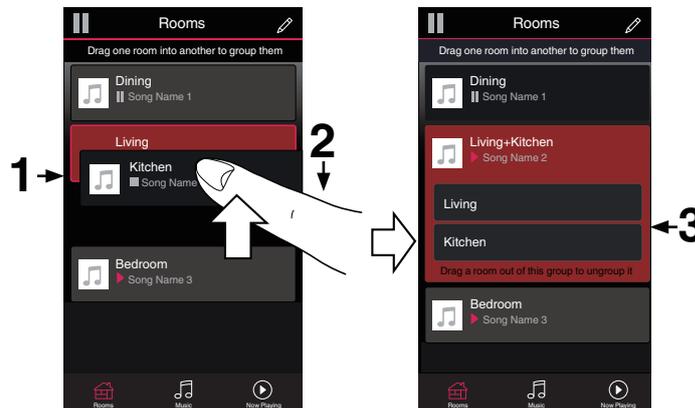
■ Ungrouping rooms

1 **Press and hold your finger on room that you want to remove from the group.**

2 **Drag it out of the group and lift your finger.**

NOTE

• You can not remove the first room that started playing the music before grouping.
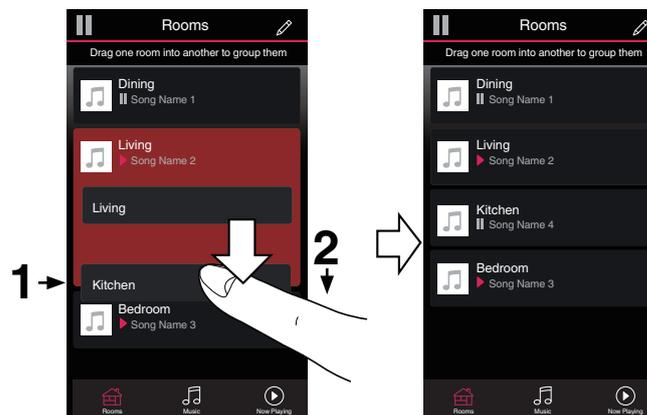
■ Grouping all rooms (party mode)

You can easily group 16 rooms together into Party Mode by using a "pinch" gesture.

1 Place two fingers on the screen over the list of rooms.

2 Quickly pinch your two fingers together and release.

3 All of your rooms will be joined together and begin playing the same music in perfect sync.

■ Ungrouping all rooms

You can easily ungroup all of your rooms and exit Party Mode by using a "spread" gesture.

1 **Place two fingers close together on the screen over list of rooms.**

2 **Quickly spread your two fingers apart from each other and release.**

3 **All of your rooms will be ungrouped.**

AirPlay function

Music files stored on your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes can be played on this unit via the network.

✎

- Source input will be switched to "HEOS Music" when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press STATUS on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.

PC   Router   This unit
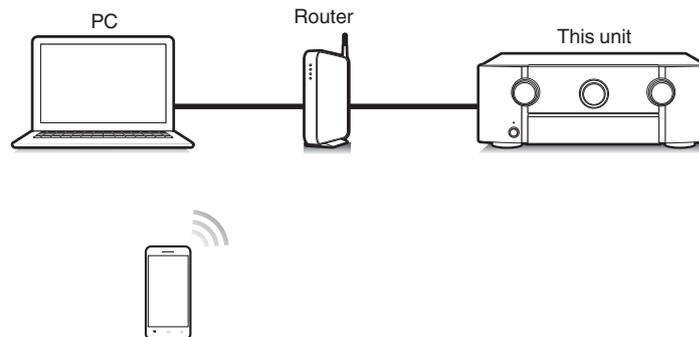
Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad

If you update your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" directly to this unit.

1 **Connect your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad Wi-Fi to the same network as this unit.**

- For details, see your device's manual.

2 **Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.**

AirPlay icon is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

3 **Tap the AirPlay icon.**

[Example] iOS 10   [Example] iOS 9

4 **Select the speaker (devices) you want to use.**

Playing iTunes music with this unit

1 **Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.**

2 **Turn this unit ON.**

Set "Network Control" to "Always On" for this unit. (☞ p. 248)

NOTE

- When "Network Control" is set to "Always On", the unit consumes more standby power.

3 **Start iTunes and click the AirPlay icon to select the main unit.**

[Example] iTunes

4 **Choose a song and click play in iTunes.**

The music will stream to this unit.

NOTE

- In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level.
  You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit

With this unit's remote control unit, you can perform iTunes song play, pause, and auto search (cue) operations.

1 Select the "Edit" - "Preferences..." in the iTunes menu.

2 Select "Devices" in the iTunes setting window.

3 Check "Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers", and then click "OK".

- This does not need to be set if using version 12 or later of iTunes.

Spotify Connect function

Spotify is the world's most popular streaming service. If you subscribe to Spotify Premium, you can control your new speaker with your phone or tablet. Because Spotify is built-in to your speaker, you can still take calls or use other apps - the music never stops.

For information on how to set up and use Spotify Connect please visit www.spotify.com/connect

Spotify server

This unit

Spotify App

Audio streaming / control

Control
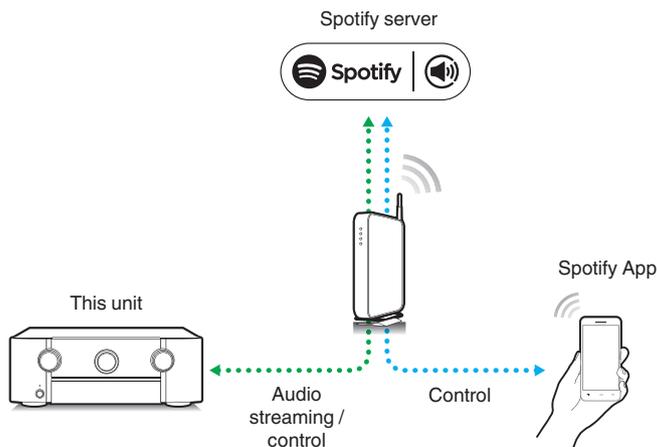
Playing Spotify music with this unit

Download the "Spotify App" onto your Android or iOS device beforehand. To play a Spotify track in this unit, you need to register in the Spotify premium account first.

1 **Connect the Wi-Fi settings of the iOS or Android device in the same network as this unit.**

2 **Launch the Spotify App.**

3 **Play back the Spotify track.**

4 **Tap the Spotify icon 🔊 to select the unit.**
The music will stream to this unit.

Convenience functions
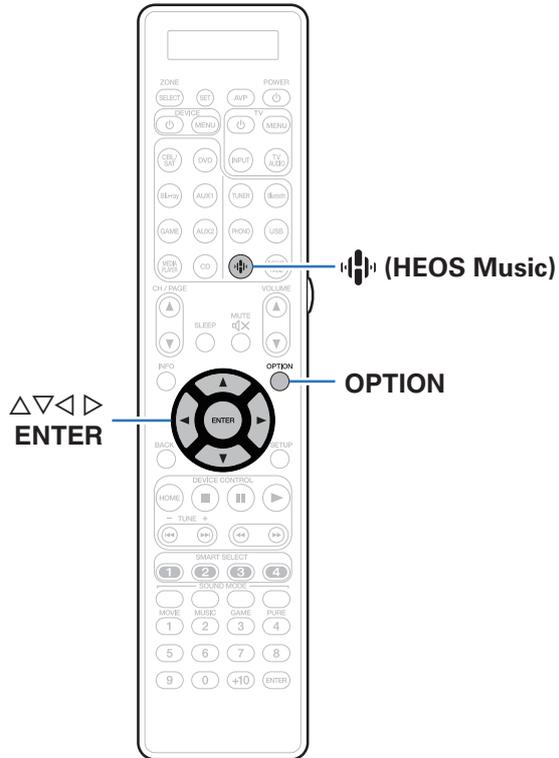
- This section explains how to use convenient functions that can be used for each input source.
- These functions can only be set in the MAIN ZONE.

🕪 **(HEOS Music)**

OPTION

△▽◁ ▷
ENTER

Adding to HEOS Favorites

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select "Add to HEOS Favorites", then press ENTER.**

Playing back HEOS Favorites

1 **Press ♫ (HEOS Music).**

2 **Use △▽ to select "HEOS Favorites", then press ENTER.**

MUSIC

TuneIn Internet Radio

HEOS Favorites

Music Servers

USB Music
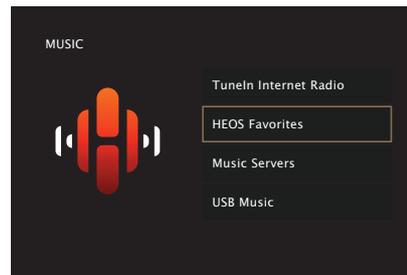
3 **Browse the content and select something to play.**

Deleting a HEOS Favorites

1 **While the HEOS Favorites content list is displayed, use $\triangle\nabla$ to select the item you want to remove from HEOS Favorites, then press OPTION.**

2 **Use $\triangle\nabla$ to select "Remove from HEOS Favorites", then press ENTER.**

Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)

This function adjusts the center channel frequency band to enhance the dialog in the movies and vocals in music for easier listening.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVP Options…", then press ENTER.

2 **Use $\triangle\nabla$ to select "Dialog Enhancer", then press ENTER.**

The "Dialog Enhancer" screen is displayed.

3 **Use $\triangleleft\ \triangleright$ to select your favorite enhancement effect.**

Off (Default):	Does not enhance the dialog or vocals.
Low / Medium / High:	Enhances the dialog and vocals.

4 **Press ENTER.**

- "Dialog Enhancer" settings are stored for each source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct", "Virtual" or "Pure Direct".
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)

The volume of each channel can be changed while listening to music. You can set this for each input source.

1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVP Options…", then press ENTER.

2 Use △▽ to select "Channel Level Adjust", then press ENTER.

The "Channel Level Adjust" screen is displayed.

3 Use △▽ to select the channel that you wish to adjust.

4 Use ◁ ▷ to adjust the volume.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

5 Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Exit", then press ENTER.

- Select "Reset" and press ENTER if you want to restore the adjustment values of the various channels to "0.0 dB" (Default).
- Headphone volume can be adjusted when a headphone is connected.
- "Channel Level Adjust" settings are stored for each input source.
- You can only set this for speakers that output audio. In addition, you cannot set this when in the menu "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV". (vp p. 194)

Adjusting the tone (Tone)

Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.

1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVP Options…", then press ENTER.

2 Use △▽ to select "Tone", then press ENTER.

The "Tone" screen is displayed.

3 Use ◁ ▷ to set the tone control function to on/off.

On:	Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).
Off (Default):	Playback without tone adjustment.

4 Select "On" in step 3 and press ▽ to select the sound range to be adjusted.

Bass:	Adjust bass.
Treble:	Adjust treble.

5 Use ◁ ▷ to adjust the tone, then press ENTER.

-6 dB – +6 dB (Default : 0 dB)

- "Tone" settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" is set to "On". (व p. 188)
- You cannot set this when no audio signal is input or in the menu "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV". (व p. 194)
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)

This unit can display video from a different source on TV during audio playback. You can set this for each input source.

❏ Supported input sources:

CD* / Tuner / HEOS Music / Phono

＊ This cannot be set when any of the HDMI, component video or video connectors are assigned.

1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVP Options…", then press ENTER.

2 Use △▽ to select "Video Select", then press ENTER.

The "Video Select" screen is displayed.

3 Use ◁ ▷ to select the Video Select mode.

Off (Default)**:**	Disable Video Select mode.
On:	Enable Video Select mode.

4 If you selected "On" in step 3, press ▽ and select "Source".

5 Use ◁ ▷ to select the input source for video you want to play back, then press ENTER.

- "Video Select" settings are stored for each input source.

Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)

❏ **Supported input sources :**
CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 /
AUX2 / Media Player / CD* / TV Audio*

＊ You can set the picture mode when an HDMI, component video or video connector is assigned.

1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

2 Use △▽ to select "Picture Mode", then press ENTER.

The "Picture Mode" screen is displayed.

3 Use ◁ ▷ to select the picture mode.

Off (Default):	No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.
Standard:	The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.
Movie:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.
Vivid:	A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.
Streaming:	A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.
ISF Day:	A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.
ISF Night:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.
Custom:	Adjusts the picture quality manually.

4 Press ENTER.

✎

- "Picture Mode" settings are stored for each input source.

Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)

You can play back the music being played back in MAIN ZONE simultaneously in ZONE2 and ZONE3 (another rooms).

It is useful when you want to enjoy the same music at the same time in multiple rooms during home party or when you want to play back the same BGM in the entire house.

1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVP Options…", then press ENTER.

2 Use △▽ to select "All Zone Stereo", then press ENTER.

The "All Zone Stereo" screen is displayed.

3 Select "Start", then press ENTER.

- The input sources for ZONE2 and ZONE3 are switched to the same input source as for MAIN ZONE, and playback starts in the All Zone Stereo mode.
- When you do not want ZONE2 or ZONE3 to participate in All Zone Stereo, press ENTER to clear the check mark and then press "Start".

■ Stopping the All Zone Stereo mode

1 During playback in All Zone Stereo mode, press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is "HEOS Music", an option menu for online music is displayed. Select "AVP Options…", then press ENTER.

2 Use △▽ to select "All Zone Stereo", then press ENTER.

3 Select "Stop", then press ENTER.

- The All Zone Stereo mode is canceled even when the power supply of the MAIN ZONE is turned off.
- In the All Zone Stereo mode, only the "Multi Ch Stereo" and "Stereo" sound modes can be selected.
- When "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV", the All Zone Stereo mode is not available. (v p. 194)
- When "Input Mode" is set to other than "7.1CH IN", the All Zone Stereo mode is available. (v p. 210)

Selecting a sound mode
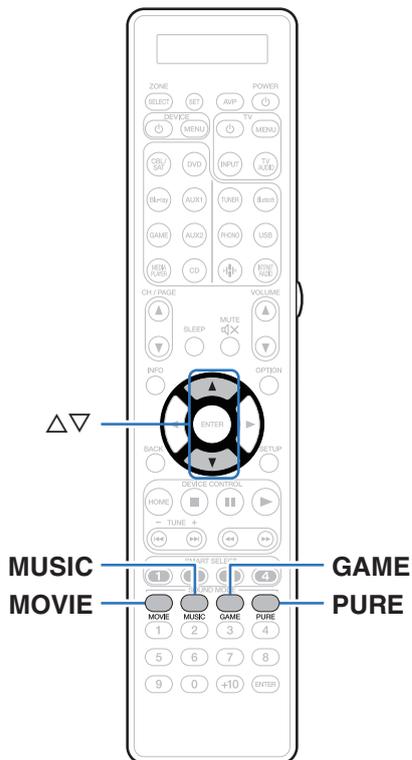
This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playback modes.
Disc formats such as Blu-ray Disc and DVD, as well as being supported by digital broadcasting, and even by streaming movies and music from internet-based subscription services.
This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.

$\mathscr{Q}$

• For audio formats recorded on a disc, see the disc jacket or label.

$\triangle\nabla$

MUSIC   GAME

MOVIE   PURE

Selecting a sound mode

1 Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a sound mode.

MOVIE :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.
MUSIC :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying music.
GAME :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying games.

🖉

- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most appropriate sound mode for the content is automatically selected.
- This can also be set by pressing MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME on the main unit.

■ Switching the sound mode

- Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to display a list of the sound modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the sound mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use $\triangle\triangledown$ to select a sound mode.
- Try out various sound modes and enjoy sound mode in your favorite mode.

🖉

- Please set the surround mode to Dolby Atmos/Surround when playing back Dolby Atmos encoded content. Dolby Atmos/Surround delivers the optimum playback experience from Blu-ray and streaming sources encoded with Dolby Atmos as well as channel based content. The default setting of this receiver is Dolby Atmos/Surround.

【Example】When MOVIE is pressed

Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

1 Press PURE to select "Direct".

Direct playback begins.

- While DSD signals are played back, "DSD Direct" is displayed.
- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

Pure Direct playback

This mode is for playback with higher sound quality than in Direct playback mode.

This mode turns off the main unit display and analog video circuit. Doing so suppresses noise sources that affect sound quality.

1 Press PURE to select "Pure Direct".

The display goes dark, and Pure Direct playback begins.
The PURE DIRECT indicator lights.

- In Direct and Pure Direct sound modes, the following items cannot be adjusted.
  - Dialog Enhancer ()
  - Tone ()
  - M-DAX ()
  - MultEQ® XT32 ()
  - Dynamic EQ ()
  - Dynamic Volume ()
  - Graphic EQ ()
- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the Pure Direct mode.
- When the Pure Direct mode has been selected, the display turns off after about 5 seconds.

Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.
Perform stereo playback when the input signal is PCM. When the input signal is Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

1 Press PURE to select "Auto".

Auto surround playback begins.

🖉

• This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

Description of sound mode types

Dolby sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Dolby Atmos*	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Atmos. If you have selected a different sound mode previously, please select again this mode for Dolby Atmos content play back. It decodes Dolby Atmos content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
Dolby TrueHD	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby TrueHD at 192kHz/96kHz.
Dolby Digital Plus	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Digital Plus.
Dolby Digital	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Digital.

＊This mode is not supported in a 5.1-channel or less speaker configuration.

DTS sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Surround	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS ES Dscrt6.1*1	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DTS ES Mtrx6.1*1	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this unit's matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround right, surround back).
DTS 96/24	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS Express	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.
DTS:X	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with DTS:X. It decodes DTS:X content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Neural:X	This mode uses DTS Neural:X Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use height speakers such as front height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Virtual:X*2*3	This mode uses DTS Virtual:X with virtual height and virtual surround processing to realize a three-dimensional sound field when the height speakers are not used.

*1　This can be selected when "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" is not set to "None". (☞ p. 231)

*2　This can be selected when Height, Ceiling and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are not being used.

*3　It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.

Auro-3D sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auro-3D	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create three-dimensional audio output using the Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D with a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to create highly realistic three-dimensional audio output.
Auro-2D Surround	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create Surround Sound without a Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D without a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to output Surround Sound.

PCM multi-channel sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch In	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM/DSD sources.

Original sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch Stereo	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.
Virtual	This mode lets you experience an expansive surround sound effect when playing back through just the front (L/R) speakers only, and when listening with stereo headphones.

Auto sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auto	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Atmos, DTS, DTS-HD, DTS:X, DTS-ES, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. For Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

Stereo sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Stereo	This mode plays 2-channel stereo audio with no additional surround sound processing. • Sound is output from the front left and right speakers, and subwoofer if connected. • When multi-channel signals are inputted, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played back with no additional surround sound processing.

Direct sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Direct	This mode plays back audio as recorded in the source.
Pure Direct	This mode plays back an even higher quality sound than the "Direct" mode. The following circuits are stopped in order to further improve sound quality. • Display indicator circuit of the main body (display will go off.) • The analog video input/output switcher and processor is disabled.

Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal

- The following sound modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC and GAME buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu "Surround Parameter" to enjoy surround sound the way you like it. (v p. 180)

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
2-channel *1	Stereo	○	○	○
	Dolby Surround *2	○	○	○
	DTS Neural:X *3	○	○	○
	DTS Virtual:X *4*5	○	○	○
	Auro-3D *6	○	○	○
	Auro-2D Surround *7	○	○	○
	Multi Ch Stereo *8	○	○	○
	Virtual	○	○	○

*1   2-channel also includes analog input.

*2   This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1, 9.1, 11.1 or 13.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used or when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.

*3   This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1, 9.1 or 11.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used or when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.

*4   It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.

*5   It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.

*6   It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration without front height or front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers is used.

*7   It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

*8   This cannot be selected when headphones are used.

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel ∗9	Stereo	○	○	○
Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital + Dolby Surround ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital + Neural:X ∗8	○	○	○
Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital Plus ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital Plus + Dolby Surround ∗8∗11	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital Plus + Neural:X ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby Atmos ∗8∗11	○	○	○
Dolby TrueHD	Dolby TrueHD ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby TrueHD + Dolby Surround ∗8∗10	○	○	○
	Dolby TrueHD + Neural:X ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby Atmos ∗8∗11	○	○	○
Dolby Atmos	Dolby Atmos ∗8	○	○	○
DTS	DTS Surround ∗8	○	○	○
	DTS ES Dscrt 6.1 ∗8	○	○	○
	DTS ES Mtrx 6.1 ∗8	○	○	○
	DTS 96/24 ∗8	○	○	○
	DTS + Dolby Surround ∗8	○	○	○
	DTS + Neural:X ∗8	○	○	○
	DTS + Virtual:X ∗4	○	○	○

∗4 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.

∗8 This cannot be selected when headphones are used.

∗9 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (℣ p. 315).

∗10 This can be selected when the input signal does not contain Dolby Atmos.

∗11 This can be selected when the input signal contains Dolby Atmos.

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
DTS-HD / DTS Express	DTS-HD HI RES *8	○	○	○
	DTS-HD MSTR *8	○	○	○
	DTS Express *8	○	○	○
	DTS-HD + Dolby Surround *8	○	○	○
	DTS-HD + Neural:X *8	○	○	○
	DTS-HD + Virtual:X *4	○	○	○
DTS:X	DTS:X *8	○	○	○
	DTS:X MSTR *8	○	○	○
	DTS:X + Virtual:X *4	○	○	○
PCM multi-channel	Multi Ch In *8	○	○	○
	Multi Ch In 7.1 *8	○	○	○
	Multi In + Dolby Surround *8	○	○	○
	Multi In + Neural:X *8	○	○	○
	Multi In + Virtual:X *4	○	○	○
Multi-channel *9	Auro-3D *6	○	○	○
	Auro-2D Surround *7	○	○	○
	Multi Ch Stereo *8	○	○	○
	Virtual	○	○	○

*4 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.

*6 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration without front height or front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers is used.

*7 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

*8 This cannot be selected when headphones are used.

*9 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ <u>p. 315</u>).

🖉

- Only "Stereo" and "Virtual" can be selected when headphones are used.

■ Views on the display
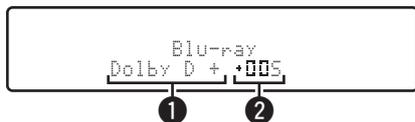
A **Shows a decoder to be used.**

- In the case of the Dolby Digital Plus decoder, "Dolby D+" is displayed.

B **Shows a decoder that creates sound output.**

- "DDS" indicates that the Dolby Surround decoder is being used.

HDMI Control function

A recent addition to the HDMI standard is CEC (Consumer Electronics Control), which allows control signals from one device to communicate with another device via the HDMI cable connection.

Setting procedure

1 **Enable the HDMI Control function of this unit.**

Set "HDMI Control" to "On". (v☞ p. 196)

2 **Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.**

3 **Set the HDMI Control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.**
- Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
- Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

4 **Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.**

5 **Switch the input source of this unit to check that video from the player connected by HDMI is played back correctly.**

6 **When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.**

NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI Control function.
- When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used with "HDMI Control" in the menu set to "On", the HDMI ZONE2 function may not fully work.

Smart Menu function

This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Tuner and Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

1 **Enable the HDMI Control function of this unit and the TV. (☞ p. 196)**

2 **Set "Smart Menu" to "On" on this unit. (☞ p. 198)**

3 **Select "AV Receiver" in a TV menu such as "Input"∗ or "Operate Connected HDMI Device"∗.**

The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV.

- This unit can be operated with the TV remote control while the Smart Menu is displayed.

∗ The selection method differs depending on your TV.

Smart Menu

| Now Playing Blu-ray | Source | Sound Mode | Setup Menu |

| Smart Select 1 | Smart Select 2 | Smart Select 3 | Smart Select 4 |

Help
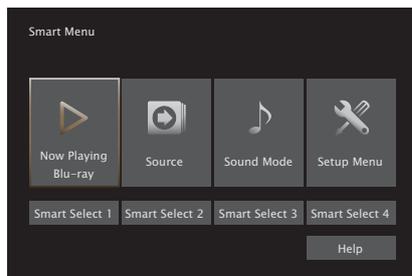
■ Now Playing

Enjoy content from the input source currently selected on this unit.

■ Source

Switch the input of this unit.

If you select "HEOS Music" or "Tuner", you can continue to operate this unit using the TV remote control.

■ Sound Mode

Change the sound mode of this unit.

You can select from the following three sound modes.

Surround:	Surround sound playback according to the input signal.
Stereo:	Stereo playback.
Multi Ch Stereo:	Multi-channel stereo playback.

■ Setup Menu

Displays a setup menu for configuring the settings of this unit.

■ Smart Select

Calls up the SMART SELECT items registered to this unit.

NOTE

- If the "HDMI Control" or "Smart Menu" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set "Smart Menu" to "Off". (☞)

Sleep timer function

You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep. The sleep timer function can be set for each zone.
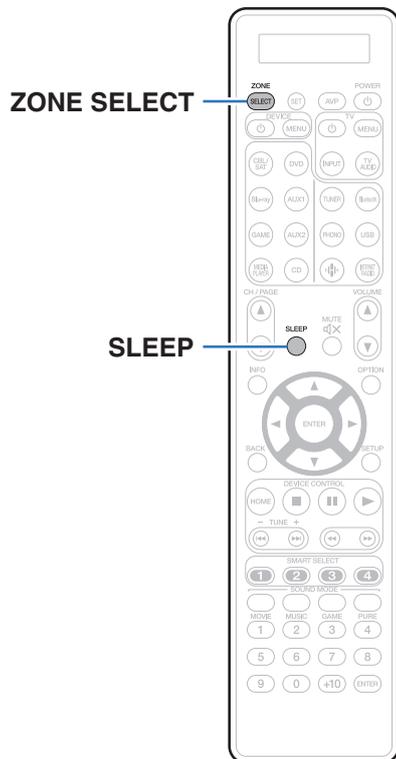
ZONE SELECT

SLEEP

Using the sleep timer

1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN", "ZONE2" or "ZONE3".**

The button for the selected zone is lit.

2 **Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**

- The sleep timer indicator lights up on the display and the sleep timer starts.
- You can set the sleep timer in the range from 10 to 120 minutes in steps of 10 minutes.

■ Checking the remaining time

Press SLEEP when the sleep timer is in operation.

The remaining time appears on the display.

■ To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to select "Off".

The sleep timer indicator on the display turns off.

- The sleep timer setting is canceled when the unit switches to standby mode.

NOTE

- The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

Smart select function
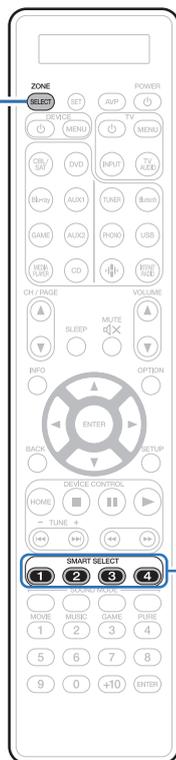
Settings such as the input source, volume level and sound mode can be registered to the SMART SELECT 1 - 4 buttons.

You can simply press one of the registered SMART SELECT buttons in subsequent playbacks to switch to the group of saved settings in a batch.

By saving frequently used settings at the SMART SELECT 1 – 4 buttons, you will always be able to easily call up the same playback environment.

The Smart Select function can be memorized for each zone.

ZONE SELECT

SMART SELECT 1 – 4

Calling up the settings

1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN", "ZONE2" or "ZONE3".**

The button for the selected zone is lit.

2 **Press SMART SELECT.**

The Smart Select settings registered to the button you pressed are called up.

- The default settings for the input source and volume are as shown below.

【MAIN ZONE】/【ZONE2】/【ZONE3】

Button	Input source	Volume
SMART SELECT 1	CBL/SAT	40
SMART SELECT 2	Blu-ray	40
SMART SELECT 3	Media Player	40
SMART SELECT 4	HEOS Music	40

Changing the settings

1 **Set the items below to the settings you want to register.**

The following settings from ① to ⑨ can be memorized for MAIN ZONE, and settings ① and ② can be memorized for ZONE2 and ZONE3.

① Input source (v p. 99)
② Volume (v p. 100)
③ Sound mode (v p. 145)
④ Audyssey (Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™) (v p. 187)
⑤ "M-DAX" (v p. 184)
⑥ "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" (v p. 140)
⑦ "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (v p. 142)
⑧ "Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)" (v p. 143)
⑨ "HDMI Video Output" (v p. 199)

✎

- Press and hold SMART SELECT while a radio station is being received is being played back with any of the following sources, the current radio station is memorized.
  - Tuner / Internet Radio Station

2 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN", "ZONE2" or "ZONE3".**

The button for the selected zone is lit.

3 **Press and hold the desired SMART SELECT until "Smart✱ Memory", "Z2 Smart✱ Memory" or "Z3 Smart✱ Memory" appears on the display.**

The current settings will be memorized.

✱ is displayed the number for the SMART SELECT button you pressed.

■ Changing the Smart Select Name

The MAIN ZONE Smart Select name displayed on the TV screen or display of this unit can be changed to a different name.
For the name change method, see "Smart Select Names" (v p. 254).

Panel lock function

To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.
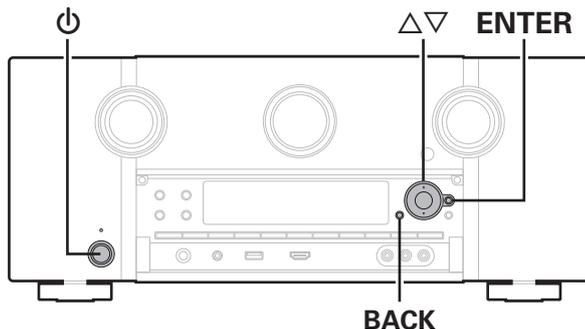
Disabling all key button operations

1 **Press Φ while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Use △▽ to select "FP/VOL LOCK On".**

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

All button operations except Φ are disabled.

Disabling all button operations except VOLUME

1 **Press Φ while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Use △▽ to select "FP LOCK On".**

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

All button operations except Φ and VOLUME are disabled.

Canceling the Panel lock function

1 **Press ⏻ while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Use △▽ to select "FP LOCK ∗Off".**

(∗ The currently set mode.)

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

The Panel lock function is canceled.

✐

- Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.

Remote lock function

When connecting an IR receiver, enable the Remote lock function. When the function is enabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

By default, this function is disabled.
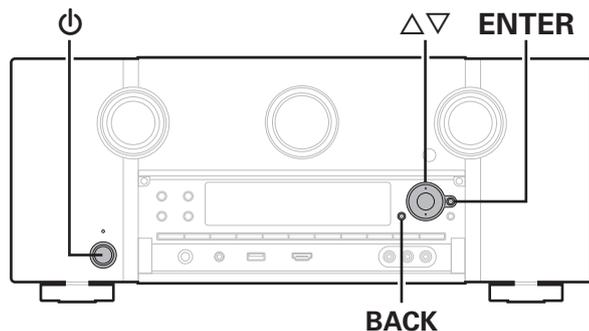
Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

1 **Press Φ while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Use △▽ to select "RC LOCK On".**

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

The infrared light receiving function is disabled.

Enabling the remote sensor function

1 **Press Φ while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Use △▽ to select "RC LOCK ＊Off".**

(＊ The currently set mode.)

3 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

Infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

Switches light illumination on/off

Light illumination
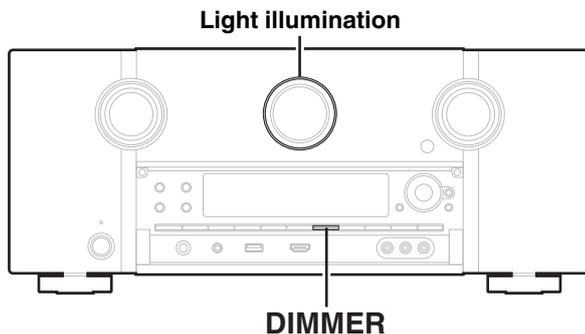
DIMMER

You can switch the light illumination around the main display on or off. The default setting is "On".

1 **Press and hold DIMMER on the main unit for 3 seconds.**

- Carry out the same procedure if you want to change the settings again.

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Another room)

You can operate this unit to enjoy video and audio in a room (ZONE2 and ZONE3) that is different from the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE).

You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

Connecting ZONE

You can use the following two methods to play back video and audio in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- "Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector" (⊗ p. 169)
- "Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers" (⊗ p. 170)

■ Connection 1 : Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector

When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 7 IN connector in ZONE2 (HDMI ZONE2 function).
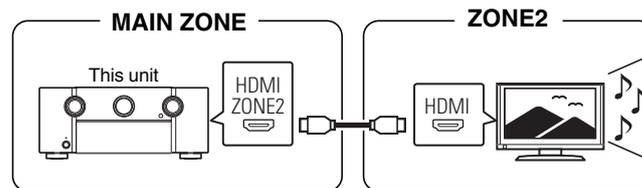
- When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, and the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source, the MAIN ZONE audio may be mixed down to 2-channel audio.

■ Connection 2 : Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers

The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output connectors are played on the ZONE2 and ZONE3 power amplifiers.
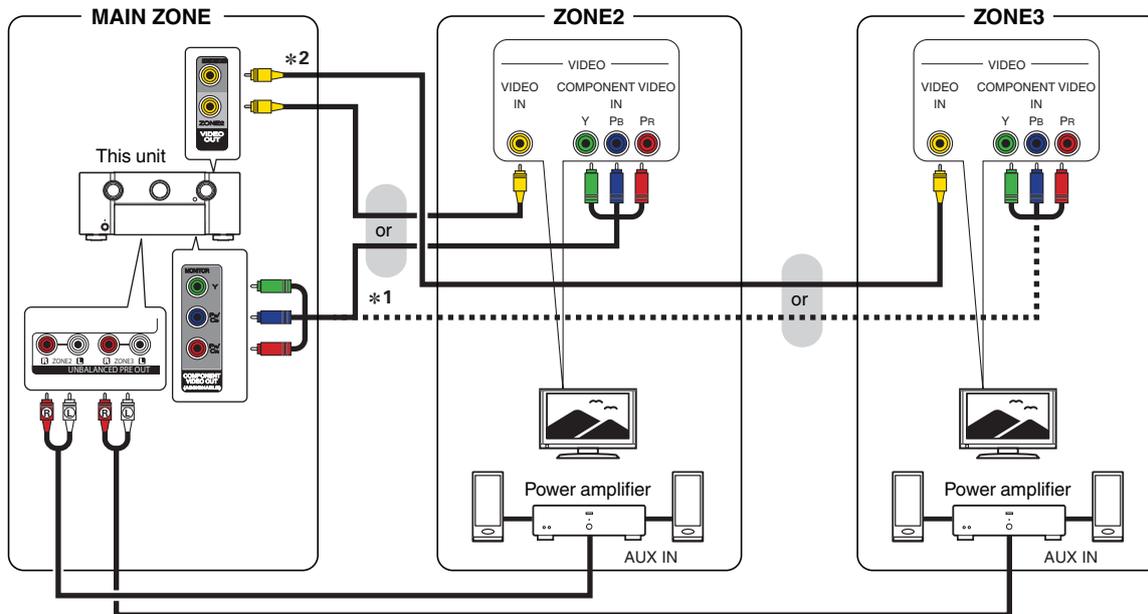
∗1 Set "ZONE2" or "ZONE3" for "Analog Video Out" - "Component" in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE component video output terminal for ZONE2 or ZONE3. (व p. 202)

∗2 Set "ZONE3" for "Analog Video Out" - "Video" in the menu to enable use of the MAIN ZONE video output terminal for ZONE3. (व p. 202)

✎

- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from HDMI connector or digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE2.
- If you want to play back HDMI signals other than 2-channel PCM in ZONE2, set "HDMI Audio" to "PCM". (☞ p. 251)
  2-channel PCM signals are output from a device connected to the input source selected for ZONE2 and can be played back in ZONE2.
  In this case, the MAIN ZONE audio will also be converted to 2-channel PCM signals if the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source. However, depending on the playback device, the playback signal may not be converted to PCM even if this setting is configured.
- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE3.
- The menu screen is not output in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3

ZONE SELECT — POWER Φ

Input source select buttons

MUTE 🔇 **VOLUME** ▲▼
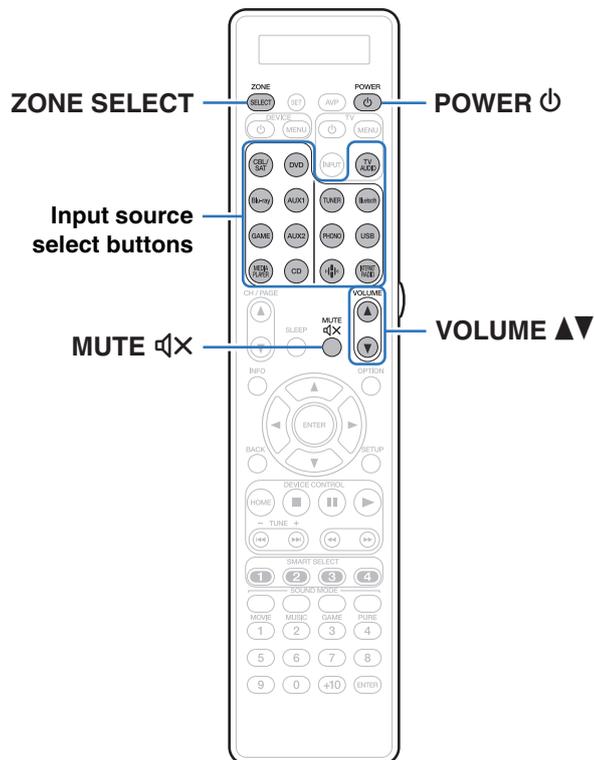
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "ZONE2" or "ZONE3".**

2 **Press POWER Φ to turn on the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power.**

The multi zone power indicator on the display lights.

- Power in ZONE2 or ZONE3 can be turned on or off by pressing ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF on the main unit.

3 **Press the input source select button to select the input source to be played.**

The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2 or ZONE3.

- You can also select ZONE2 or ZONE3 as the input source by pressing ZONE SELECT and then turning the INPUT SELECTOR.

■ Adjusting the volume (ZONE2/ZONE3)

Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.

- At time of purchase, "Volume Limit" is set to "70 (–10 dB)".
  ()

✎

- Turn VOLUME after pressing ZONE SELECT on the main unit to adjust the volume.

■ Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2/ZONE3)

Press MUTE ◁✕.

The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" in the menu.
()

- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE ◁✕ again.

Menu map

When using menu operations, connect this unit to a TV and operate this unit while viewing the TV.

The recommended settings are configured for this unit by default. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Audio	Subwoofer Level Adjust	Adjusts the subwoofer channel volume for all input sources.	179
	Bass Sync	Adjusts the phase shift when there is a delay in the bass (LFE) recorded on a disc.	179
	Surround Parameter	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	180
	M-DAX	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio content such as MP3 files to enable richer audio playback.	184
	Audio Delay	Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.	185
	Volume	Sets the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	186
	Audyssey	Makes Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ settings.	187
	Graphic EQ	Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.	190
Video	Picture Adjust	Adjusts picture quality.	192
	HDMI Setup	Makes settings for HDMI Audio Out, HDMI Pass Through and HDMI Control settings.	194
	Output Settings	Makes settings for video output.	199
	Analog Video Out	Selects the zone that uses component video output and video output.	202
	On Screen Display	Configures the on-screen display settings.	203
	4K Signal Format	Set the 4K signal format when the TV or playback device is 4K compatible.	204
	TV Format	Sets the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.	205

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Inputs	**Input Assign**	Changes input connector assignment.	206
	Source Rename	Changes the display name for input source.	208
	Hide Sources	Removes from the display input sources that are not used.	209
	Source Level	Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.	209
	Input Select	Sets the audio input mode.	210
Speakers	**Audyssey® Setup**	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	211
	Manual Setup	Sets up the speakers manually or changes Audyssey® Setup settings.	222
Network	**Information**	Displays network information.	243
	Connection	Selects whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.	243
	Settings	Used for manually setting the IP address.	246
	Network Control	Enables network communication in standby power mode.	248
	Friendly Name	The "Friendly Name" is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.	248
	Diagnostics	Used to check the network connection.	249

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
HEOS Account	【When the user is signed out the HEOS Account】		
	I have a HEOS Account	Selects to sign in.	250
	Create Account	Creates new HEOS Account.	250
	Forgot Password	If you forgot your password, we'll send you an email with instructions about how to reset it.	250
	【When the user is signed in the HEOS Account】		
	Signed in As	Displays your HEOS Account.	250
	Change Location	Selects your location.	250
	Change Password	Changes your HEOS Account Password.	250
	Delete Account	Deletes your HEOS Account.	250
	Sign Out	Sign out of your HEOS Account.	250

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
General	Language	Changes the language of the display on the TV screen.	251
	ZONE2 Setup/ ZONE3 Setup	Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.	251
	Zone Rename	Changes the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	254
	Smart Select Names	Changes the Smart Select Name display title to one you prefer.	254
	Trigger Out 1/ Trigger Out 2	Select the conditions for activating trigger out function.	254
	Auto Standby	Configures the Auto Standby energy-saving functions.	255
	Front Display	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	256
	Firmware	Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display.	257
	Information	Shows information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.	260
	Usage Data	Selects whether or not to send anonymous usage data to Marantz.	261
	Save & Load	Save and restore device settings by using a USB memory device.	262
	Setup Lock	Protects settings from inadvertent changes.	262
Setup Assistant	Begin Setup...	Performs basic installation/connections/settings from the beginning according to the guidance indicated on the TV screen.	Page 9 of the separate manual "Quick Start Guide"
	Language Select	Sets individual setting items according to the guidance displayed on the TV screen.	
	Speaker Setup		
	Speaker Calibration		
	Network Setup		
	TV Audio Connection		
	Input Setup		
	Mobile Apps		

Menu operations

ZONE SELECT

△▽◁ ▷
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
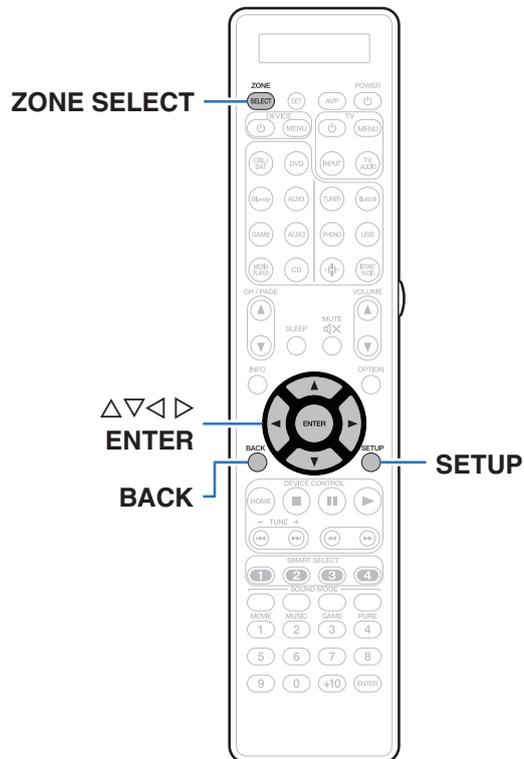
1 **Press ZONE SELECT to switch "MAIN".**

2 **Press SETUP.**

The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use △▽ ▷ to select the menu to be set or operated, then press ENTER.**

4 **Use ◁ ▷ to change to desired setting.**

5 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press BACK.
- Exiting the menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

Audio

Make audio-related settings.

Subwoofer Level Adjust

Adjusts the subwoofer channel volume for all input sources.

■ Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2

Adjusts the volume for the subwoofer 1 or subwoofer 2 channel.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

Bass Sync

For contents recorded in multi-channel such as Blu-ray discs, the recorded low frequency effects (LFE) may be out of synch and delayed. This function corrects such a delay of low frequency effects (LFE).

0 ms – 16 ms (Default : 0 ms)

$\rlap{\diagdown}{\diagup}$

- How low frequency effects (LFE) are delayed differ according to the disc. Set this to the desired value.
- "Bass Sync" settings are stored for each input source.
- This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

Surround Parameter

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.

The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see "Sound modes and surround parameters" ().

- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- "Surround Parameter" settings are stored for each sound mode.

■ Cinema EQ

Gently softens the upper treble range of movie soundtracks to reduce possible harshness and improve clarity.

On:	"Cinema EQ" is used.
Off (Default):	"Cinema EQ" is not used.

■ Loudness Management

This sets whether to output as specified in "Dynamic Compression" or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.

On (Default):	Outputs are given based on enabling the settings made in "Dynamic Compression" and Dialogue normalization function.
Off:	"Dynamic Compression" settings and Dialogue normalization are disabled, and the signals on the disc are output as is.

- "Loudness Management" can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD and Dolby Atmos signal is input.

■ Dynamic Compression

Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).

Auto:	Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.
Low / Medium / High:	These set the compression level.
Off:	Dynamic range compression is always off.

🖉

- "Dynamic Compression" can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS signal is input.
- The default setting is "Off". When the input signal is the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos source, the default setting is "Auto".
- "Auto" cannot be set when inputting a DTS signal.

■ Dialog Control

Adjust the volume of dialog in movies, vocals in music, etc. so these can be heard more easily.

0 – 6 (Default : 0)

🖉

- This can be set when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

■ Low Frequency Effects

Adjust the low frequency effects level (LFE).

❑ When "Input Mode" is set other than to "7.1CH IN"

-10 dB – 0 dB (Default: 0 dB)

❑ When "Input Mode" is set to "7.1CH IN"

0 dB / +5 dB / +10 dB / +15 dB (Default: +10 dB)

🖉

- For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.
  - Dolby Digital sources: 0 dB
  - DTS movie sources: 0 dB
  - DTS music sources: -10 dB

■ Center Spread

Center Spread expands the center channel signal to left and right front speakers to create a wider frontal audio image for the listener. It is optimized and designed primary for playback of stereo music content.

On:	Use "Center Spread".
Off (Default):	Do not use "Center Spread".

- You can set this when sound mode is "Dolby Surround".

■ DTS Neural:X

DTS Neural:X Expands the non-object based audio signals and optimizes them for your speaker configuration.

On (Default):	Use "DTS Neural:X".
Off:	Do not use "DTS Neural:X".

- You can set this when sound mode is "DTS:X" or "DTS:X MSTR".

■ Auro-Matic 3D Preset

Selects the Auro-Matic 3D Preset for fine tuning the Auro-3D experience to specific audio material.

Small:	"Small" is ideal for pop and chamber music or movies with a lot of dialog. (e.g. comedy)
Medium (Default):	"Medium" is best used on jazz music or typical movies and TV shows.
Large:	"Large" is ideal for recordings that were recorded in large spaces. (e.g. orchestral recordings or action movies with big explosions.)
Speech:	"Speech" is ideal for recordings which are mostly dialog (e.g. news broadcast), and that have virtually no inherent spatial information.

- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

■ Auro-Matic 3D Strength

Changes the level of the up-mixed channels in relation to the original input signal.
The value ranges from 1 (no up-mixing) to 16 (Maximum level, providing maximum effect).

1 - 16 (Default:10)

- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

■ Speaker Select

Makes settings for the speakers outputting sound.

Floor:	Plays back without height speakers.
Floor & Height (Default):	Plays back with height speakers.

- This can be set when the sound mode is the original sound mode.

■ Subwoofer

Turn subwoofer output on and off.

On (Default):	The subwoofer is used.
Off:	The subwoofer is not used.

- You can set this when the sound mode is "Direct" or "Stereo" and in the menu "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main". (p. 239)

■ Set Defaults

The "Surround Parameter" settings are returned to the default settings.

M-DAX

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The "M-DAX" function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also restores the original bass characteristics for a rich and expanded tonal range.

■ Mode

High:	Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs (64 kbps and under).
Medium:	Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources (96 kbps and under).
Low:	Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs (96 kbps and over).
Off:	Do not use "M-DAX".

- The M-DAX indicator lights.
- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This item default setting for "HEOS Music" is "Low". All others are set to "Off".
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".
- "M-DAX" settings are stored for each input source.
- This can also be set by pressing M-DAX on the main unit.

Audio Delay

Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.

> ✎
> - Audio Delay for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" is set to "Auto" or "Game". (⟳ p. 200)
> - "Audio Delay" settings are stored for each input source.
> - This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

■ Auto Lip Sync

Automatically adjusts the audio processing time to compensate for delays in audio/video timing from TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync.

On (Default):	Correct automatically.
Off:	Do not correct automatically.

> ✎
> - Automatic correction may not be performed depending on the specifications of your TV even when "Auto Lip Sync" is set to "On".

■ Adjust

The timing mismatch between the picture and sound needs to be corrected manually.

0 ms – 500 ms (Default : 0 ms)

> ✎
> - You can also finely adjust the delay correction value set by "Auto Lip Sync".
> - Adjust for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" is set to "Auto" or "Game". (⟳ p. 200)

Volume

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

■ Scale

Set how volume is displayed.

0 - 98 (Default):	Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.
−79.5 dB – 18.0 dB:	Display ---dB (Min), in the range −79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.

- "Scale" settings are reflected in all the zones.

■ Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

60 (–20 dB) / 70 (–10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)
Off (Default)

- The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is " –79.5 dB – 18.0 dB". (p. 186)

■ Power On Level

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

Last (Default):	Use the memorized setting from the last session.
Mute:	Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.
1 – 98 (–79 dB – 18 dB) :	The volume is adjusted to the set level.

- The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is " –79.5 dB – 18.0 dB". (p. 186)

■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

Full (Default):	The sound is muted entirely.
–40 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.
–20 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

Audyssey®

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see "Explanation of terms" ().

- "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ", "Reference Level Offset", "Dynamic Volume", "Audyssey LFC™" and "Containment Amount" settings are stored for each input source.
- When the sound mode is in the "Direct" or "Pure Direct" mode, "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ", "Dynamic Volume" and "Audyssey LFC™" settings cannot be configured.
- When the sound mode is in "DTS Virtual:X" or sound mode that have "+Virtual:X" in the sound mode name, "Dynamic EQ", "Dynamic Volume" and "Audyssey LFC™" settings cannot be configured.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

■ MultEQ® XT32

MultEQ® XT32 compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on Audyssey® Setup measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. We recommend the "Reference" setting.

Reference (Default):	Selects the default calibrated setting with a slight roll off at high frequencies, which is optimized for movies.
L/R Bypass:	Selects the reference setting, but bypasses MultEQ® XT32 on the front left and right speakers.
Flat:	Selects the calibrated setting which is optimized for small rooms where your listening position is closer to the speakers.
Off:	Do not use "MultEQ® XT32".

- When using headphones, "MultEQ® XT32" is automatically set to "Off".

■ Dynamic EQ

Solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

On (Default)**:**	Use "Dynamic EQ".
Off:	Do not use "Dynamic EQ".

🖉

- When the menu "Dynamic EQ" setting is "On", it is not possible to do "Tone" adjustment. ()
- This can be set by pressing DYNAMIC EQ on the main unit.

■ Reference Level Offset

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels for content are shown below.

0 dB (Film Reference) (Default)**:**	Optimized for content such as movies.
5 dB :	Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
10 dB :	Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
15 dB :	Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.

🖉

- Setting is enabled when "Dynamic EQ" is "On". ()

■ Dynamic Volume

Solves the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

Heavy:	Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
Medium:	Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
Light:	Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use "Dynamic Volume".

- If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup", the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". (☞ p. 211)
- This can be set by pressing DYNAMIC VOLUME on the main unit.

■ Audyssey LFC™

Adjusts the low frequency band to prevent bass and vibration from being conveyed to neighboring rooms.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

On:	Use "Audyssey LFC™".
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use "Audyssey LFC™".

■ Containment Amount

Adjusts the amount of low frequency containment. Use higher settings if you have close neighbors.

1 – 7 (Default : 4)

- This can be set when "Audyssey LFC™" in the menu is set to "On".

Graphic EQ

Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.

- Speakers for which "Graphic EQ" can be set differ according to the sound mode.
- This can be set when "MultEQ® XT32" setting is "Off". ()
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- If you are using headphones, you can set the equalizer for headphones. ()
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

■ Graphic EQ / Headphone EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer or not.

On:	Use the graphic equalizer.
Off (Default):	Do not use the graphic equalizer.

- "Headphone EQ" is set in the menu when headphones are used.

■ Speaker Selection

Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.

All:	Adjust all speaker tones together.
Left/Right (Default):	Adjust the left and right speaker tones together.
Each:	Adjust the tone for each speaker.

■ Adjust EQ

Adjust tonal balance for each frequency band.

1. Select the speaker.
2. Select the adjustment frequency band.

   63 Hz / 125 Hz / 250 Hz / 500 Hz / 1 kHz / 2 kHz / 4 kHz / 8 kHz / 16 kHz
3. Adjust the level.

   –20.0 dB – +6.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

- Front Dolby, Surround Dolby and Back Dolby speakers can only be set when 63 Hz/125 Hz/250 Hz/500 Hz/1 kHz.

■ Curve Copy

Copy the Flat correction curve created in Audyssey® Setup.

🖉

- "Curve Copy" is displayed after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.
- "Curve Copy" cannot be used when using headphones.

■ Set Defaults

The "Graphic EQ" settings are returned to the default settings.

Video

Make video-related settings.

Picture Adjust

Picture quality can be adjusted.

✎
- This can be set when the "Video Conversion" setting is "On". (⊘ p. 200)
- This can be set when "HDMI", "COMP" or "VIDEO" is assigned for each input source. (⊘ p. 207)
- "Contrast", "Brightness", "Saturation", "Noise Reduction" and "Enhancer" can be set when "Picture Mode" is set to "Custom". (⊘ p. 192)
- "Picture Adjust" settings are stored for each input source.
- "Picture Adjust" cannot be set when 4K signals are input.

■ Picture Mode

Select the desired picture mode according to the video content and your viewing environment.

Standard:	The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.
Movie:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.
Vivid:	A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.
Streaming:	A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.
ISF Day:	A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.
ISF Night:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.
Custom:	Adjusts the picture quality manually.
Off (Default):	No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.

🖉

- The two special adjustment modes, "ISF Day" and "ISF Night", should be used by a certified technician to adjust the color calibration to match the installation conditions.
  We recommend that the settings and adjustments be carried out by an ISF-certified technician.
- These settings can also be configured using "Picture Mode" in the option menu. (☞ p. 192)

■ Contrast

Adjust picture contrast.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

■ Brightness

Adjust picture brightness.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

■ Saturation

Adjust picture chroma level (color saturation).

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

■ Noise Reduction

Reduce overall video noise.

Low / Medium / High / Off (Default : Off)

■ Enhancer

Emphasize picture sharpness.

0 – +12 (Default : 0)

HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI Audio Out, HDMI Pass Through and HDMI Control settings.

NOTE

- When "HDMI Pass Through" and "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it consumes more standby power. ("HDMI Pass Through" (), "HDMI Control" ()) If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

■ HDMI Audio Out

Select HDMI audio output device.

AVP (Default):	Play back through speakers connected to power amp. (Audio is output from the PRE OUT connector on this unit.)
TV:	Play back through TV connected to the unit.

- When the HDMI Control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting. ()
- When the power of this unit is on and "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV", audio is output as 2-channel from the HDMI OUT connector.

■ Vertical Stretch

Sets whether video signals are vertically stretched or not.

On:	Stretches video signals vertically.
Off (Default):	Does not stretch video signals vertically.

- "Vertical Stretch" can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off". ()

■ HDMI Pass Through

Selects how this unit will transmit HDMI signals to the HDMI output in standby power mode.

On (Default):	Transmits the selected HDMI input through this unit's HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.
Off:	No HDMI signals are transmitted through this unit's HDMI output in standby power mode.

■ Pass Through Source

Sets the HDMI connector that inputs HDMI signals when in standby.

Last:	The most recently used input source will go into standby mode.
CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / Media Player / CD∗ **/ AUX1 / AUX2** (Default : CBL/SAT)**:**	Pass through the selected input source.

∗"Pass Through Source" can be set when any of the HDMI connectors is assigned to "CD" for the input source in the "Input Assign" setting. (v p. 206)

✐

- "Pass Through Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On" or "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "On". ("HDMI Pass Through" (v p. 194), "HDMI Control" (v p. 196))

■ RC Source Select

Set whether to allow this unit to be turned on by the input source select button on the remote control when this unit is on standby.

Power On + Source (Default)**:**	The power of this unit is turned on and the input source changes.
Source Select Only:	The HDMI input source changes while this unit is on standby. The power display of this unit blinks when the input source select button of the remote control is pressed.

✐

- "RC Source Select" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On" or "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "On". ("HDMI Pass Through" (v p. 194), "HDMI Control" (v p. 196))

■ HDMI Control

You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.

On:	Use HDMI Control function.
Off (Default):	Do not use HDMI Control function.

- If using the HDMI Control function, connect a TV compatible with HDMI control to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.
- Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.
- Refer to "HDMI Control function" for more information about the HDMI Control function. (v p. 157)

NOTE

- If the "HDMI Control" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

■ ARC

On the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector, set whether to receive sound from the TV via HDMI.

On:	Use ARC function.
Off (Default):	Do not use ARC function.

- You can adjust the volume of this unit using the TV remote control.
- If using this function, use a TV compatible with ARC (Audio Return Channel) and enable the HDMI Control function of the TV.
- When "HDMI Control" is set to "On", the "ARC" settings automatically switch "On". (v p. 196)

NOTE

- If the "ARC" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

■ TV Audio Switching

Sets automatic switching to the "TV Audio" input when a TV connected via HDMI sends an appropriate CEC control command to this unit.

On (Default):	Select the "TV Audio" input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.
Off:	Do not select the "TV Audio" input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.

- "TV Audio Switching" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On". (☞ p. 196)

■ Power Off Control

Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.

All (Default):	If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
Video:	With an input source being selected that is assigned either "HDMI", "COMP" or "VIDEO", when you turn the power of the TV off, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. (☞ p. 207)
Off:	This unit does not link with power to a TV.

- "Power Off Control" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On". (☞ p. 196)

■ Power Saving

If "TV Speaker" is set as the audio output setting of your TV, this unit is automatically set to standby mode to reduce power consumption.
This function is activated in the following cases.

- When "TV Audio" is selected as the input source of this unit
- When playing content from a device connected by HDMI

On:	Use Power Saving function.
Off (Default):	Do not use Power Saving function.

- "Power Saving" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On". (☞ p. 196)

■ Smart Menu

This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Tuner and Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

On:	Use Smart Menu function.
Off:	Do not use Smart Menu function.

- "Smart Menu" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On". (☞ p. 196)

NOTE

- If the "Smart Menu" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set "Smart Menu" to "Off".

Output Settings

Makes settings for video output.

- This can be set when "HDMI", "COMP" or "VIDEO" is assigned for each input source. (p. 207)
- "Resolution", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off". ("Resolution" (p. 201), "Progressive Mode" (p. 201), "Aspect Ratio" (p. 202))
- "Output Settings" cannot be set when 4K signals are input.
- "Video Conversion", "i/p Scaler", "Resolution", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" settings are stored for each input source. ("Video Conversion" (p. 200), "i/p Scaler" (p. 200), "Resolution" (p. 201), "Progressive Mode" (p. 201), "Aspect Ratio" (p. 202))

■ HDMI Video Output

Select the HDMI monitor connector to be used.

Auto(Dual) (Default):	The presence of a TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 or HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is detected automatically, and that TV connection is used.
Monitor 1:	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector is always used.
Monitor 2:	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is always used.

- If both the HDMI MONITOR 1 and HDMI MONITOR 2 connectors are connected and "Resolution" is set to "Auto", the signals are output with a resolution that is compatible with both TVs. (p. 201)
  When the "Resolution" setting in the menu is not set to "Auto", set the resolution in "Video" - "HDMI Monitor 1" and "HDMI Monitor 2" to one that is compatible with both TVs. (p. 260)
- You can check which resolutions are compatible with your TV in "HDMI Monitor 1" and "HDMI Monitor 2". (p. 260)
- When connecting multiple Dolby Vision TVs, the signal will only be optimal for one TV. A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector has priority.

■ Video Mode

Configure the video processing method to match the type of video content.

Auto (Default):	Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information.
Game:	Always process video for game content. Minimize the video delay when the video is delayed compared to the button operations on the controller of the game console.
Movie:	Perform image processing that is suitable for contents other than games.

- If "Video Mode" is set to "Auto", the mode is switched according to the input contents.

■ Video Conversion

The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV. ()

On (Default):	The input video signal is converted.
Off:	The input video signal is not converted.

■ i/p Scaler

Set the video input signal to be subjected to i/p Scaler processing. i/p Scaler will convert the resolution of the input video signal to the value set in "Resolution". ()

Analog (Default):	Use i/p (interlace-to-progressive) scaler function for analog video signals.
Analog & HDMI:	Use i/p Scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal.
HDMI:	Use i/p Scaler function for HDMI video signals.
Off:	Do not use i/p Scaler function.

■ Resolution

Set the output resolution. You can set "Resolution" separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input.

Auto (Default)**:**	The resolution supported by the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR OUT connector is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set.
480p/576p / 1080i / 720p / 1080p / 1080p:24Hz / 4K / 4K (60/50) :	Set the output resolution.

✎

- When "i/p Scaler" is set to "Analog & HDMI", the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set. (☞ p. 200)
- When set to "1080p:24Hz", you can enjoy film-like pictures for film sources (in 24 Hz). For video sources and mixed sources, we recommend setting the resolution to "1080p".
- It is not possible to convert a 50 Hz signal into 1080p/24Hz. It is output at a resolution of 1080p/50Hz.

■ Progressive Mode

Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal.

Auto (Default)**:**	The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set.
Video:	Select mode suitable for video playback.
Video and Film:	Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback.

✎

- This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off". (☞ p. 200)

■ Aspect Ratio

Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI.

16:9 (Default):	Output at 16:9 aspect ratio.
4:3 :	Output at 4:3 aspect ratio with black bars on the sides of a 16:9 TV screen. (except for 480p/576p output)

- ✎
- This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off". (☞ p. 200)

Analog Video Out

Selects the zone that uses component video output and video output.

■ Component

Selects the zone that uses component video output.

MAIN ZONE (Default):	Used in the MAIN ZONE.
ZONE2:	Used in the ZONE2.
ZONE3:	Used in the ZONE3.

■ Video

Selects the zone that uses video output.

MAIN ZONE (Default):	Used in the MAIN ZONE.
ZONE3:	Used in the ZONE3.

On Screen Display

Select the on-screen display user interface preferences.

■ Volume

Sets where to display the volume level.

Bottom (Default):	Display at the bottom.
Top:	Display at the top.
Off:	Turn display off.

✎

- When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed text (closed captioning) or movie subtitles are present, set to "Top".

■ Info

Displays status of operation temporarily when the input source is switched.

On (Default):	Turn display on.
Off:	Turn display off.

■ Now Playing

Sets the display time for the playback display when the input source is "HEOS Music" or "Tuner".

Always On (Default):	Show display continuously.
Auto Off:	Show display for 30 seconds after operation.

4K Signal Format

Set the 4K signal format to be played back by this unit when the TV or playback device connected to this unit is HDMI 4K (60Hz/50Hz) signal compatible.

■ 4K Signal Format

Set the format of the 4K signal played back by this unit.

Standard (Default)**:**	Select if your TV and playback devices support standard 4K 60p 4:2:0 8 bit video signals.
Enhanced:	Select if your TV, playback devices, and cables support high quality 4K 60p 4:4:4, 4:2:2 or 4K 60p 4:2:0 10 bit video signals.

【Relation between the "4K Signal Format" setting and supported resolutions】

Support Resolution	Color Space	Pixel Depth	4K Signal Format	
			Enhanced	Standard (Default)
4K 24p, 4K 30p, 4K 25p	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8 bit	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	✓	–
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	✓	✓
4K 60p, 4K 50p	YCbCr 4:2:0	8 bit	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	✓	–
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8 bit	✓	–
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	✓	–

- 🖉
- When setting this to "Enhanced", we recommend using a "Premium High Speed HDMI Cable" or "Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet" that has an "HDMI Premium Certified Cable" label attached to the product package.
- When this setting is "Enhanced", configure the television or playback device settings to match this setting.
- When this setting is "Enhanced", video may not be output correctly depending on the connected playback device or HDMI cable. In this case, change this setting to "Standard".
- "Custom" is displayed for the setting item if our service engineers or custom installers has configured the HDMI signal format for this unit.
- "4K Signal Format" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the setting.

  1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE SELECT at the same time for at least 3 seconds.

     "✳Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.
  2. Use △ or ▽ on the main unit.

     "4K Format:<Standard>" appears on the display.
  3. Use the main unit's ◁ or ▷ and select the 4K Signal Format.
  4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

TV Format

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

■ Format

NTSC (Default):	Select NTSC output.
PAL:	Select PAL output.

- 🖉
- "Format" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.

  1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE SELECT at the same time for at least 3 seconds.

     "✳Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.
  2. Use the main unit's ◁ or ▷ and set the video signal format.
  3. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

NOTE

- When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.

Inputs

Perform settings related to input source playback.

You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

Input Assign

By making connections as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit, you can just press one of the input source select buttons to easily play back audio or video from a connected device.

Please change the assignment of the HDMI input connector, digital audio input connector, analog audio input connector, component video input connector and video input connector when connecting an input source that differs from that printed to the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
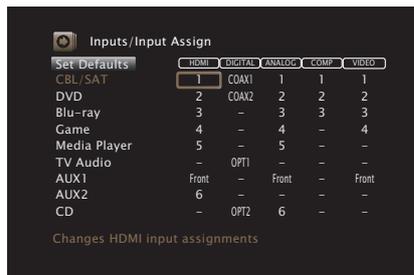
* By default, each item is set as follows.

Input source	Input connector				
	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	COMP	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX1	1	1	1
DVD	2	COAX2	2	2	2
Blu-ray	3	–	3	3	3
Game	4	–	4	–	4
Media Player	5	–	5	–	–
TV Audio	–	OPT1	–	–	–
AUX1	Front	–	Front	–	Front
AUX2	6	–	–	–	–
CD	–	OPT2	6	–	–

❑ TV set top box/satellite users please note

When using the digital audio output on a TV/satellite box:

To play the video signal assigned to "HDMI" combined with the audio signal assigned at "Input Assign" - "DIGITAL", you will also need to select "Digital" in the "Input Mode". (☞)

■ HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 7 / Front:	Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.

✎

- When "HDMI Control" or "ARC" is set to "On" in the menu, "HDMI" cannot be assigned to "TV Audio". ("HDMI Control" (☞ p. 196), "ARC" (☞ p. 196))

■ DIGITAL

Set this to change the digital audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

COAX1 (Coaxial) **/ COAX2 / OPT1** (Optical) **/ OPT2:**	Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

■ ANALOG

Set this to change the analog audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / Front / XLR:	Assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

■ COMP (Component video)

Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3:	Assign the component video input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.

◼ VIDEO

Set this to change the composite video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / Front:	Assign the video input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a video input connector to the selected input source.

◼ Set Defaults

The "Input Assign" settings are returned to the default settings.

Source Rename

Change the display name for input source.

This is convenient when the name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit's display and on the menu screen.

CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / Media Player / TV Audio / CD / Phono / AUX1 / AUX2:	Change the display name for input source.
Set Defaults:	The "Source Rename" settings are returned to the default settings.

🖉

- Up to 12 characters can be input.

Hide Sources

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

Show (Default):	Use this source.
Hide:	Do not use this source.

Source Level

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.

Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

■ Source Level

❏ When the input source is set to "HEOS Music" or "Tuner"

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

■ Analog Inputs / Digital Inputs

❏ When the input source is set other than to "HEOS Music" or "Tuner"

-12dB – +12dB (Default : 0dB)

🖉

- The analog input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "ANALOG" is assigned at "Input Assign". (☞ p. 206)
- The digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign". (☞ p. 206)
- "Source Level" settings are stored for each input source.

Input Select

Set the audio input mode of each input source.

The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.

✎
- "Input Select" settings are stored for each input source.

■ Input Mode

Set the audio input modes for the different input sources.

It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto".

Auto (Default):	Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
HDMI:	Play only signals from HDMI input.
Digital:	Play only signals from digital audio input.
Analog:	Play only signals from analog audio input.
7.1CH IN:	Only signals input from the 7.1CH IN connector will be played back.

✎
- When digital signals are properly input, the DIG. indicator lights on the display. If the DIG. indicator does not light, check "Input Assign" and the connections. (ᐸᔑp. 206)
- If "HDMI Control" is set to "On" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR 1 connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV Audio" is fixed to ARC.
- The sound mode cannot be set if the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

Speakers

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called "Audyssey® Setup".

You do not have to perform Audyssey® Setup when you have already performed "Speaker Calibration" in "Setup Assistant".

To set up the speakers manually, use "Manual Setup" on the menu. (☞)

Audyssey® Setup

To perform measurement, place the Sound calibration microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

When measuring the second and subsequent positions, install the Sound calibration microphone within 2 ft (60 cm) of the first measurement position (main listening position).

🖉

- If you perform Audyssey® Setup, Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ functions are enabled. (☞)

(▬ :Measuring positions)

Listening position
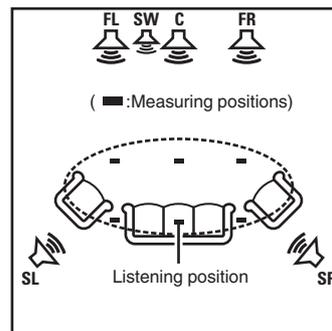
FL Front speaker (L)
FR Front speaker (R)
C Center speaker
SW Subwoofer
SL Surround speaker (L)
SR Surround speaker (R)

■ About the main listening position

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the Sound calibration microphone in the main listening position.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

■ About Audyssey Sub EQ HT™

Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration of dual subwoofers seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together.

To run Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ you must select "Measure (2 spkrs)" in "Channel Select". (☞).

NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not stand between the speakers and Sound calibration microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. Also, install the Sound calibration microphone at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the wall. Failure to do so will result in inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, audible test tones will come from the speakers and subwoofer(s), but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in the room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME ▲ ▼ on the remote control unit or VOLUME on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.

Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│            Preparation               │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
                  │
                  ▼
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│            Measurement               │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
                  │
                  ▼
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│        Calculation & Store           │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
                  │
                  ▼
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│               Check                  │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
                  │
                  ▼
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│               Finish                 │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
```

1 **Attach the Sound calibration microphone to the supplied microphone stand or own tripod and install it at the main listening position.**

When installing the Sound calibration microphone, point the tip of the microphone toward the ceiling and adjust the height to match the height of the ears of a listener in a seated position.

2 **If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.**

❑ **When using a subwoofer with a direct mode**

Set the direct mode to "On" and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

❑ **When using a subwoofer without a direct mode**

Make the following settings:
- Volume : 12 o'clock position
- Crossover frequency : Maximum/Highest Frequency
- Low pass filter : Off
- Standby mode : Off

3 **Connect the Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.**
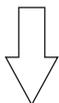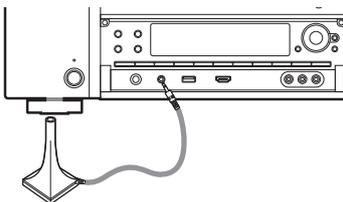
When the Sound calibration microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.
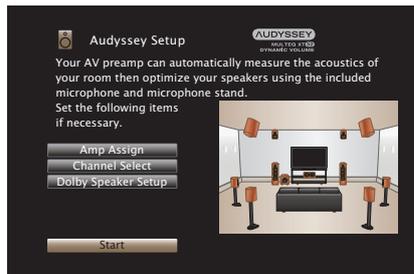
4 **Select "Start", then press ENTER.**

Audyssey® Setup can also make the following settings.

- **Amp Assign**

  The signals output from the SURROUND BACK, HEIGHT1, HEIGHT2, HEIGHT3 and HEIGHT4/FRONT WIDE PRE OUT connectors can be switched in accordance with your speaker environment. ("Amp Assign" (☞))

- **Channel Select**

  If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers and subwoofer.

- **Dolby Speaker Setup**

  Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

  This can be set when using the Front Dolby Atmos Enabled, Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled or Back Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker.

5 **Follow the instructions on the screen display and press "Next" to proceed further.**

6 When the following screen is displayed, select "Begin Test" and then press ENTER.

Start the measurement of the first position.

- Measurement requires several minutes.

NOTE

- **If "Caution!" is displayed on TV screen:**
  - Go to "Error messages" (☞ p. 219). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
  - If the volume level for the subwoofer is not appropriate, an error message is displayed. See "Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust" (☞ p. 220).

7 When the detected speaker is displayed, select "Next" and then press ENTER.

8 **Move the Sound calibration microphone to position 2, select "Continue", then press ENTER.**

The measurement of the second position starts.

Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.

❏ Stopping Audyssey® Setup

① Press BACK to display the popup screen.
② Press ◁ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

9 **Repeat step 8, measuring positions 3 to 8.**

✎
• To skip measuring the fourth and subsequent listening position, press ◁ to select "Complete" and press ENTER to proceed to step 11.

10 **Select "Continue", then press ENTER.**
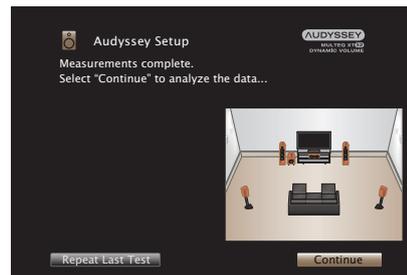
Start the analysis and storage of the measurement results.

• Analysis takes several minutes to complete.
The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

NOTE
• When the measurement results are being saved, make sure the power is not turned off.

11 **Perform the settings for Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.**

The following screen is displayed during the analysis. Configure the settings as preferred.
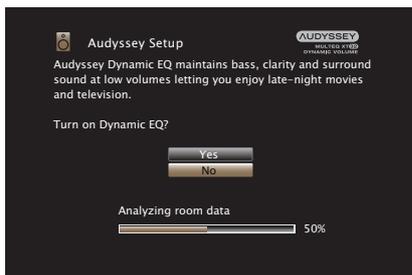
- Dynamic EQ corrects the frequency response in consideration of the audio characteristics of the room and human hearing ability so that sound can be heard even at low volume.
  This is recommended when using the unit with the volume turned down, e.g. when enjoying a movie or TV program in the middle of the night.
- Dynamic Volume adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

12 **When the analysis and storage ends, unplug the Sound calibration microphone from the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit and then press "Next".**
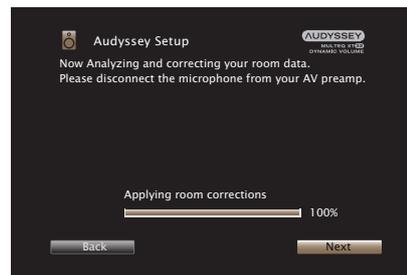
13 **Select "Details" and press ENTER to verify the measurement results.**

- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.

NOTE

- Do not change the speaker connection or subwoofer volume after Audyssey® Setup. If these are changed, run Audyssey® Setup again in order to configure the optimum equalizer settings.

Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

Examples	Error details	Measures
No speakers found.	• Sound calibration microphone is not detected. • Not all speakers could be detected.	• Connect the included Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit. • Check the speaker connections.
Ambient noise is too high or level is too low	• There is too much noise in the room. • Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low.	• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. • Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. • Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. • Adjust the subwoofer's volume.
Front R : None	• The displayed speaker could not be detected.	• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.
Front R : Phase	• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.	• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker. • For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press ▷ to select "Ignore", then press ENTER.

■ Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust

The optimal level of each subwoofer channel for Audyssey® Setup measurement is 75 dB.

During subwoofer level measurement, an error message is displayed when one level of subwoofers is outside the 72 – 78 dB range.

When using a subwoofer with built-in amplifier (active type), adjust the subwoofer volume so that the subwoofer level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

〖 Error message 〗

Audyssey Setup

Your Subwoofer 1's level is too high.
If your subwoofer has a volume control on it,
select "SW Level Matching" to interactively adjust the level of
your subwoofer.

If your subwoofer does not have a volume control,
or if you do not want to use a subwoofer, select "Skip".

Back   Skip   SW Level Matching
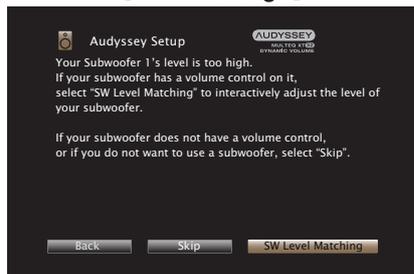
1 Select "SW Level Matching" and then press ENTER.

2 Adjust the volume control on your subwoofer so that the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

3 When the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range, select "Next" and then press ENTER.

- If you use two subwoofers, the second subwoofer's adjustment will be started. Repeat the operation from step 2, 3.

Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set "Restore..." to "Restore", you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT32) even when you have changed each setting manually.

Manual Setup

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you add or remove a speaker after performing Audyssey® Setup, you will no longer be able to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® or Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. (v☞ p. 187)
- "Manual Setup" can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

Amp Assign

You can change the Pre Amplifier assignment according to your speaker system.

■ Assign Mode

Select how to use the Pre Amplifier.
You need to configure the detailed settings for the speaker configuration in accordance with the selected mode. Select Assign Mode configure the corresponding detailed settings.

13.1ch (Default)**:**	- All Pre Amplifiers of this unit are used for MAIN ZONE. - You can connect speakers for up to 15.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. The pre-out output automatically switches for playing back up to 13.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode when 15.1-channel speakers are installed.
11.1ch (Bi-Amp):	- The Pre Amplifier of this unit is assigned to 2-channels for creating bi-amp connections with the front speaker. - You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.
11.1ch + Front B:	- The Pre Amplifier of this unit is assigned to 2-channels for connecting to the second front speaker. - You can switch between the desired combination of front speakers A and front speakers B. Switch the front speaker using the "Front Speaker" setting. (v☞ p. 240)

■ Pre-out for Bi-Amp / Pre-out for Front B

When "Assign Mode" is set to "11.1ch (Bi-Amp)" or "11.1ch + Front B" in the menu, select the PRE OUT connectors used for bi-amp or second pair front speakers.

HEIGHT 2:	The assigned channels are output from the HEIGHT2 PRE OUT connectors. Up to one pair of height, ceiling, and Dolby Atmos Enabled channels can be used.
HEIGHT 3 (Default):	The assigned channels are output from HEIGHT3 PREOUT connectors. Up to two pairs of height, ceiling, and Dolby Atmos Enabled channels can be used. The front wide channel cannot be used.
SURROUND BACK:	The assigned channels are output from the SURROUND BACK PRE OUT connectors. The surround back channel cannot be used.

■ Floor

❑ Layout

Select the floor speakers location.

5ch & SB & FW:	This layout combines a surround back or front wide speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch & SB (Default):	This layout combines a surround back speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch & FW:	This layout combines a front wide speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch:	This is a basic 5-channel layout that uses front speakers, center speakers and surround speakers.

■ Height

❑ Height Sp

Select the number of the height speakers and ceiling speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

None:	Uses no height and ceiling speakers.
2ch:	Uses a set of (two) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
4ch (Default):	Uses two sets of (four) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
5ch:	Uses five height or ceiling speakers.
6ch:	Uses six height or ceiling speakers.
7ch:	Uses seven height or ceiling speakers.
8ch:	Uses eight height or ceiling speakers.

- Select the "5ch" setting or higher when using Top Surround or Center Height speakers.

❑ Dolby Sp

Select the number of the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

None (Default):	Uses no Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
2ch:	Uses a set of (two) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
4ch:	Uses two sets of (four) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
6ch:	Uses three sets of (six) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

❏ Layout

Set the speaker layout when installing 1 set (2-channels) of Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of "Assign Mode" and "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu. ("Assign Mode" (☞ p. 222), "Floor" - "Layout" (☞ p. 223))

Settings			AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/FRONT WIDE
None	None	-	-	-	-	-
2ch	None	Front Height	Front Height	-	-	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-	-	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-	-	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-	-	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-	-	-
None	2ch	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-	-	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-	-
		Back Dolby ∗	Back Dolby	-	-	-

∗ This can be selected when using Surround Back speakers. Set "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu to "5ch & SB" or "5ch & SB & FW". (☞ p. 223)

❏ Front Layout / Middle Layout / Rear Layout

Set the speaker layout when installing 2 sets (4-channels) or more of Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of "Assign Mode" and "Floor" - "Layout" in the menu. ("Assign Mode" (v p. 222), "Floor" - "Layout" (v p. 223))

Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
2ch	2ch		Front Dolby	-	Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear	-	-
			Front Dolby	-	Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Height	-	Surround Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Front Height	-	Back Dolby *1	Front Height	Back Dolby	-	-
			Top Front	-	Surround Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Top Front	-	Back Dolby *1	Top Front	Back Dolby	-	-
4ch	None		Front Height	-	Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle	-	-
			Front Height	-	Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear	-	-
			Front Height	-	Rear Height *2	Front Height	Rear Height	-	-
			Front Height	-	Surr. Height	Front Height	Surr. Height	-	-
			Top Front	-	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	-	-
			Top Front	-	Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height	-	-
			Top Middle	-	Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	-	-

Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
None	4ch		Front Dolby	-	Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	-	-
			Front Dolby	-	Back Dolby*1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	-	-
5ch	None		Front Height	Top Surround	Rear Height*2	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height	Surr. Height & Top Surround	None	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround	-
			Front Height & Center Height	None	Rear Height*2	Front Height	Rear Height	R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Center Height	Surr. Height	None	Front Height	Surr. Height	R: Center Height	-
6ch	None	*3	Front Height	Surr. Height	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surr. Height	-
			Front Height & Center Height	Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-
			Front Height & Center Height	Surr. Height & Top Surround	None	Front Height	Surr. Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height	-
		*4	Front Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	-
			Top Front	Top Middle	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Top Middle	-

Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
4ch	2ch		Front Height	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
			Top Front	Surround Dolby	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Surround Dolby	-
2ch	4ch		Front Height	Surround Dolby	Back Dolby*1	Front Height	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
			Front Dolby	Top Middle	Back Dolby*1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Top Middle	-
			Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	-
None	6ch		Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	Back Dolby*1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
7ch	None	*5	Front Height	Top Middle & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Center Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	R: Center Height
5ch	2ch	*5	Front Height	Surr. Dolby & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Center Height	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	R: Center Height

Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors			
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	HEIGHT 3	HEIGHT 4/ FRONT WIDE
8ch	None	∗5	Front Height & Center Height	Top Middle & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle	L: Top Surround R: Center Height
6ch	2ch	∗5	Front Height & Center Height	Surr. Dolby & Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby	L: Top Surround R: Center Height

∗1 This can be selected when using Surround Back speakers.

∗2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

∗3 Use 2 sets of Height speakers in the appropriate sound modes for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or Auro-3D playback.
Use the Front Height and Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos or DTS:X playback.
Use the Front Height and Surround Height speakers for Auro-3D playback.

∗4 This can be set when "Floor" - "Layout" is set to "5ch" or "5ch & SB". (➥ <u>p. 223</u>)

∗5 This combination cannot be selected when Front Wide speakers are being used.

■ View Terminal Config.

This shows how to connect the PRE OUT connectors for your "Amp Assign" setting on the menu screen.

Speaker Config.

Select whether or not speakers are present, playback capacity for low bass frequencies and speaker size.

🖊

- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in "Amp Assign" are set to "None", "None" is automatically set for Height2, Height3 and Height4.
- When speakers for which you assigned Height2 in "Amp Assign" are set to "None", "None" is automatically set for Height3 and Height4.

■ Front

Set the front speaker size.

Large (Default):	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small:	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.

🖊

- When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".
- When "Front" is set to "Small", you cannot set speakers other than "Front" to "Large".

■ Center

Set the presence and size of the center speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when a center speaker is not connected.

■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

2 spkrs:	Use two subwoofers.
1 spkr (Default):	Use only one subwoofer.
None:	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.

🖊

- When "Subwoofer" is set to "None" and you set "Front" to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set to "1 spkr".

■ Surround

Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround speakers are not connected.

- When "Surround" is set to "None", "Surr. Back", "Front Wide", "Surround Dolby" and "Back Dolby" are automatically set to "None".

■ Surr. Back

Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.

2 spkrs (Default)**:**	Use two surround back speakers.
1 spkr:	Use only one surround back speaker. Connect to the L terminal to SURROUND BACK when this setting is selected.

- When "Surr. Back" is set to "None" or "1 spkr", "Back Dolby" is automatically set to "None".

■ Front Wide

Set the presence and size of the front wide speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front wide speakers are not connected.

■ Front Height

Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front height speakers are not connected.

■ Front Dolby

Set the presence and size of the front Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front Dolby speakers are not connected.

■ Top Front

Set the presence and size of the top front speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top front speakers are not connected.

■ Top Middle

Set the presence and size of the top middle speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top middle speakers are not connected.

■ Surround Dolby

Set the presence and size of the surround Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround Dolby speakers are not connected.

■ Top Rear

Set the presence and size of the top rear speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top rear speakers are not connected.

■ Surr. Height

Set the presence and size of the surround height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround height speakers are not connected.

🖉

• When "Front Height" is set to "None", "Surr. Height" is automatically set to "None".

■ Rear Height

Set the presence and size of the rear height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the rear height speakers are not connected.

■ Back Dolby

Set the presence and size of the back Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the back Dolby speakers are not connected.

- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in "Amp Assign" are set to "None", "None" is automatically set for Height2, Height3 and Height4.

■ Center Height

Set the presence and size of the center height speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the center height speaker is not connected.

- When "Surr. Height" or "Rear Height" is set to "None", "Center Height" is automatically set to "None".
- When "Center" is set to "None", "Center Height" is automatically set to "None".

■ Top Surround

Set the presence and size of the top surround speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top surround speaker is not connected.

- When "Surr. Height" or "Rear Height" is set to "None", "Top Surround" is automatically set to "None".

Distances

Set distance from listening position to speakers.

Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.

■ Unit

Set the unit of distance.

Feet (Default)

Meters

■ Step

Set the minimum variable width of the distance.

1 ft / 0.1 ft (Default: 1 ft)

0.1 m / 0.01 m

■ Set the distance

0.0 ft – 60.0 ft / 0.00 m – 18.00 m

🖉

- The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the "Amp Assign" and "Speaker Config." settings. ("Amp Assign" (v p. 222), "Speaker Config." (v p. 230))
- Default settings:
  Front L / Front R / Center / Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2 / F. Wide L / F. Wide R / F. Height L / F. Height R / Front Dolby L / Front Dolby R / Center Height: 12.0 ft (3.60 m)
  Speakers other than the above: 10.0 ft (3.00 m)
- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).

■ Dolby Speaker Setup

Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

3.0 ft - 11.0 ft / 0.90 m - 3.30 m (Default: 6.0 ft / 1.80 m)

🖉

• This can be set when "Front Dolby", "Surround Dolby" or "Back Dolby" is set to "Large" or "Small" in "Speaker Config.".

■ Set Defaults

The "Distances" settings are returned to the default settings.

Levels

Set the volume of the test tone to be the same at the listening position when it is output from each speaker.

■ Test Tone Start

A test tone is output from the selected speaker.

While listening to the test tone, adjust the volume output from the selected speaker.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

🖉

• The set "Levels" are reflected in all sound modes.
• If you wish to adjust the channel level for each input source, carry out the settings in "Channel Level Adjust". (p. 140)
• When headphones are connected to the PHONES connector on this unit, you cannot set "Levels".

■ Set Defaults

The "Levels" settings are returned to the default settings.

Crossovers

Set in accordance with the lower limit frequency of the base frequencies that can be played back through each speaker. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.

■ Speaker Selection

Selects how to set the crossover frequency.

All (Default):	Sets the same crossover frequency for all speakers.
Individual:	Selects the crossover points for each speaker individually.

■ Set the crossover frequency

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 80 Hz)

- "Crossovers" can be set when the "Subwoofer Mode" setting is "LFE+Main", or when you have a speaker that is set to "Small". (☞ p. 239)
- The default crossover frequency is "80 Hz", which will work best with the widest variety of speakers. We recommend setting to a higher frequency that the crossover frequency when small speakers are used. For example, set to "250 Hz" when the frequency range of the speakers is 250 Hz – 20 kHz.
- Sound below the crossover frequency is cut off from the output of the speakers set in "Small". This cut off bass frequency is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
- The speakers that can be set when "Individual" is selected differ depending on to the "Subwoofer Mode" setting. (☞ p. 239)
  - When "LFE" is selected, speakers set to "Small" at "Speaker Config." can be set. If the speakers are set to "Large", "Full Band" is displayed and the setting cannot be made. (☞ p. 230)
  - When "LFE+Main" is selected, speakers can be set regardless of the "Speaker Config." setting. (☞ p. 230)

Bass

Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.

■ Subwoofer Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

LFE (Default)**:**	The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.
LFE+Main:	The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.

- "Subwoofer Mode" can be set when "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to other than "None". (℃ p. 230)
- Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass.
- If "Speaker Config." - "Front" and "Center" are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode. (℃ p. 230)
  Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.

■ LPF for LFE

Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency (low pass filter point) of the subwoofer.

80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz
(Default: 120 Hz)

Front Speaker

Set the front speaker A/B to use for every sound mode.

A (Default):	Front speaker A is used.
B :	Front speaker B is used.
A+B :	Both front speakers A and B are used.

- This can be set when "Assign Mode" is set to "11.1ch + Front B". (v p. 222)

2ch Playback

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

■ Setting

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

Auto (Default):	The settings in "Speakers" are applied. (v p. 211)
Manual:	Set the speakers for 2-channel playback. Make the following settings:

■ Front

Set the size of the front speakers for 2-channel playback.

Large (Default):	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small:	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.

- When "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None", "Large" is automatically set. (v p. 230)

■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

| Yes (Default): | Use a subwoofer. |
| No: | Select when a subwoofer is not connected. |

- When "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None", No is automatically set. (☞ p. 230)
  If the "Front" setting is "Small", the setting is automatically "Yes".

■ SW Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

| LFE (Default): | When "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Large", only LFE signals are output from the subwoofer. Also, when "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Small", the front channel low range signals are added to the LFE signals and output from the subwoofer. |
| LFE+Main: | The front channel low range signal is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. |

- This can be set when "2ch Playback" - "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes".

■ Crossover

Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer.

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 80 Hz)

- This can be set when "2ch Playback" - "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes".
- When "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Large" and "SW Mode" is set to "LFE", "Full Band" is displayed and this cannot be set.

■ Distance FL / Distance FR

Set distance from main listening position to speaker.

0.0 ft – 60.0 ft (Default: 12.0 ft) **/**
0.00 m – 18.00 m (Default: 3.60 m)

- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).

■ Level FL / Level FR

Adjust the level of each channel.

-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.

If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set "DHCP" to "On". (Use the default setting.) This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN).

When assigning an IP address to each device manually, you need to assign an IP address to this unit using the "IP Address" settings, and enter information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask, etc.

Information

Display network information.

___

**Friendly Name / Connection / SSID / DHCP / IP Address /
MAC Address (Ethernet) / MAC Address (Wi-Fi) /
Wi-Fi signal strength**

___

Connection

Choose whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.

When connecting to the network using wired LAN, select "Wired (Ethernet)" after connecting a LAN cable.

When connecting to the network using wireless LAN, select "Wireless (Wi-Fi)" and configure the "Wi-Fi Setup". (☞ p. 244)

■ Connect Using

Select the method for connecting to the home network (LAN).

Wired (Ethernet):	Use a LAN cable to connect to a network.
Wireless (Wi-Fi) (Default)**:**	Use the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) function to connect to a network.

Wi-Fi Setup

Connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router.
The router can be connected in the following ways. Select the connection method to suit your home environment.

■ Scan Networks

Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of possible networks shown on the TV screen.

1. Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of wireless networks.

   Select "Rescan" if the network cannot be found.

2. Enter your password and select "OK".

■ Use iOS Device

Use your iOS device (iPhone/iPod/iPad) to connect to the network. By connecting your iOS device to this unit using Wi-Fi, the unit can be automatically connected to the same network as your device.

1. Select "Use iOS Device" on the TV screen.

2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router and select "Marantz AV8805" from "SET UP NEW AIRPLAY SPEAKER..." at the bottom of the Wi-Fi configuration screen of your iOS device.

3. Tap "Next" on the screen of the iOS device.

- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 7 or later.

■ WPS Router

Use a WPS-compatible router to connect using the push button method.

1. Select "Push Button" on the TV screen.
2. Switch to the WPS mode by pressing the WPS button of the router you wish to connect to.
   - The time for pressing the button varies depending on the router.
3. Select "Connect" on the TV screen within 2 minutes.

■ Manual

Enter the name (SSID) and password of the network you wish to connect to.

1. Set the following items.

SSID:	Input the name of the wireless network (SSID).
Security:	Select the encryption method according to the encryption setting of the access point you are using.
Password:	Input the password.

2. Select "Connect" at the end of the setting.

✎

- The wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) settings of this unit can also be configured from a PC or tablet that supports wireless LAN connection.
  1. Press and hold the DIMMER and ZONE SELECT buttons on the main unit for at least 3 seconds when the power of the unit is on.
  2. Connect the wireless LAN of the PC or tablet used to "Marantz AV8805" when the message "Connect your Wi-Fi device to Wi-Fi network called "Marantz AV8805"" appears in the display.
  3. Start up the browser and enter "192.168.1.16/Settings/" in the URL.
  4. Use the browser to enter the settings, select "Connect" and then exit the settings.

- The Default key of this unit is fixed at "1". Set Default key of the router to "1" to use.

Settings

Configure the IP address.

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), the information required for network connection such as the IP address will be automatically configured since the DHCP function is set to "On" in the default settings of this unit.
- Set up the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and DNS server information only when assigning a fixed IP address or when connecting to a network without DHCP function.
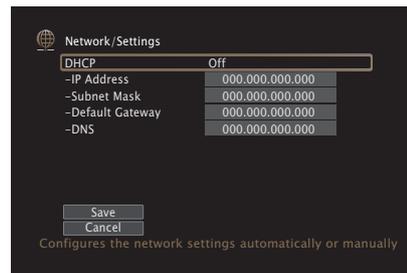
■ DHCP

Selects how to connect to the network.

On (Default):	Configure the network settings automatically from your router.
Off:	Configure the network settings manually.

■ IP Address

Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.

- The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.
  CLASS A: 10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254
  CLASS B: 172.16.0.1 - 172.31.255.254
  CLASS C: 192.168.0.1 - 192.168.255.254

■ Subnet Mask

When connecting an xDSL modem or connector adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input "255.255.255.0".

■ Default Gateway

When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

■ DNS

Enter the DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider.

✎
- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings. (☞)
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.

Network Control

Enables network communication in standby power mode.

Off In Standby:	Suspend network function during standby.
Always On (Default):	Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.

- ✏️
- When using the Marantz 2016 AVR Remote App or HEOS App, use with the "Network Control" setting set to "Always On".

NOTE
- When "Network Control" is set to "Always On", the unit consumes more standby power.

Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

■ Friendly Name

Selects Friendly Name from the list.

When you select "Other", you can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

Home Theater /Living Room / Family Room / Guest Room / Kitchen / Dining Room / Master Bedroom / Bedroom / Den / Office / Other

- ✏️
- Up to 30 characters can be input.
- The default Friendly Name on first use is "Marantz AV8805".

■ Set Defaults

Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.

Diagnostics

Used to check the network connection.

■ Physical Connection

Checks the physical LAN port connection.

OK	
Error:	The LAN cable is not connected. Check the connection.

- When connected using a wireless LAN, "Connection Wireless (Wi-Fi)" will be displayed.

■ Router Access

Checks the connection from this unit to the router.

OK	
Error:	Failed to communicate with the router. Check the router settings.

■ Internet Access

Checks whether this unit has access to the Internet (WAN).

OK	
Error:	Failed to connect to the Internet. Check the Internet connection environment or router settings.

HEOS Account

Make HEOS Account-related settings.

HEOS Account is needed in order to use HEOS Favorites.

The menu displayed differs depending on the status of the HEOS Account.

You have not signed in

■ I have a HEOS Account

If you already have a HEOS Account, enter the current account name and password to sign in.

■ Create Account

If you do not have a HEOS Account, create a new HEOS Account.

■ Forgot Password

If you have forgotten the password, an email explaining how to reset the password will be sent.

You have already signed in

■ Signed in As

The currently signed in HEOS Account is displayed.

■ Change Location

Change the regional settings for the signed in HEOS Account.

■ Change Password

Change the password for the signed in HEOS Account.

■ Delete Account

Delete the signed in HEOS Account.

■ Sign Out

Sign out from the HEOS Account.

General

Make various other settings.

Language

Set the language for display the menu on the TV screen.

English / Français / Español (Default: English)

✎

- "Language" can also be set up by the following operation. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the settings.

  1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE SELECT at the same time for at least 3 seconds.

     "＊Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.

  2. Use △ or ▽ on the main unit twice.

     "＊GUI Language <ENGLISH>" appears on the display.

  3. Use the main unit's ◁ or ▷ and set the language.

  4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup

Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.

✎

- Values set for "Volume Limit" and "Power On Volume" are displayed according to the setting specified for the volume "Scale". (☞ p. 186)

■ Bass

Adjust bass.

-10dB – +10dB (Default : 0dB)

■ Treble

Adjust treble.

-10dB – +10dB (Default : 0dB)

■ High Pass Filter

Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.

On:	The low range is attenuated.
Off (Default):	The low range is not attenuated.

■ Lch Level

Adjust the left channel output level.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

■ Rch Level

Adjust the right channel output level.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

■ Channel

Set whether to playback in stereo or monaural.

Stereo (Default):	Stereo playback.
Mono:	Monaural playback.

■ HDMI Audio (ZONE2 only)

Selects the audio signal format for playing an HDMI source in ZONE2.

Through (Default):	The HDMI audio signal is passed through this unit to the device in ZONE2.
PCM:	The HDMI audio signal input into this unit is converted to a PCM signal that can be output from the ZONE2 PRE OUT connectors.

■ Volume Level

Set the volume output level.

Variable (Default):	Volume can be adjusted.
1 – 98 (−79 dB – 18 dB):	Volume is fixed at the desired level. The volume cannot be adjusting using the remote control unit.

$\mathscr{O}$

• The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is " −79.5 dB – 18.0 dB". ()

■ Volume Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)
(Default : 70 (-10 dB))

| Off: | Do not set a maximum volume. |

- This can be set when "Volume Level" is set to "Variable". (v p. 252)
- The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is " –79.5 dB – 18.0 dB".
  (v p. 186)

■ Power On Volume

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

Last (Default):	Use the memorized setting from the last session.
Mute:	Always mute when power is turned on.
1 – 98 (–79 dB – 18 dB):	The volume is adjusted to the set level.

- This can be set when "Volume Level" is set to "Variable". (v p. 252)
- The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is " –79.5 dB – 18.0 dB".
  (v p. 186)

■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

Full (Default):	The sound is muted entirely.
-40 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.
-20 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3

Set Defaults:	The default setting is restored for the edited zone name.

✏️

• Up to 10 characters can be input.

Smart Select Names

Change the smart select name that appears on the TV screen to one you prefer.

Smart Select 1 / Smart Select 2 / Smart Select 3 / Smart Select 4

Set Defaults:	The default setting is restored for the edited smart select name.

✏️

• Up to 16 characters can be input.

Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2

Select the conditions for activating trigger out.
For details about how to connect the DC OUT jacks, see "DC OUT jacks" (☞).

❑ When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3)

Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to "On".

❑ When setting for input source

Activate trigger out when the input source set to "On" is selected.

❑ When setting for HDMI monitor

Activate trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to "On" is selected.

On:	Activate trigger on this mode.
– – –:	Do not activate trigger on this mode.

Auto Standby

Set so the unit power automatically switches to standby.

■ MAIN ZONE

Sets the time for switching to auto standby when there are no audio or video signals input into this unit.
Before the unit enters standby mode, "Auto Standby" is displayed on the unit display and the menu screen.

60 min:	The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
30 min:	The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
15 min:	The unit goes into standby after 15 minutes.
Off (Default):	The unit does not go into standby automatically.

■ ZONE2 / ZONE3

When there are no operations for a certain period of time as set here, the power is automatically shut off even if there is audio or video input.

8 hours:	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 the standby state after about 8 hours.
4 hours:	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 4 hours.
2 hours:	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 2 hours.
Off (Default):	Does not automatically switch ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state.

Front Display

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

■ Dimmer

Adjust the display brightness of this unit.

Bright (Default)**:**	Normal display brightness.
Dim:	Reduced display brightness.
Dark:	Very low display brightness.
Off:	Turns the display off.

✎

- You can also adjust the display by pressing DIMMER on the main unit.

■ Channel Indicators

Sets whether to use the input signal display or output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

Input:	Uses the input signal display for the channel indication on the display.
Output (Default)**:**	Uses the output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

Firmware

Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display for upgrades.

■ Check for Update

Check for firmware updates.
The firmware can be updated if a firmware update has been released.

Update Now:	Execute the update process. When the update starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the update, the progress is shown on the display.
Update Later:	Update later.

- This unit automatically retries updating if updating fails. If an update still cannot be performed, an "Update Error" message appears in the display. See "Troubleshooting" – "Update/upgrade error messages" for information on update error messages. (p. 298)
Check the conditions according to the message and try the update again.
- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".

■ Auto-Update

Turns on Automatic Updates so that futures updates are automatically downloaded and installed when this unit is in standby mode.

❑ Auto-Update

This unit will automatically update to the newest firmware when in standby mode.

On:	Turns on Automatic Updates.
Off (Default):	Turns off Automatic Updates.

❑ Time Zone

Change the time zone.
Set the time zone that matches the area where you live.

- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".

■ Allow Update

Enable or disable updates and upgrades for this unit.

On (Default):	Enables this unit to receive updates and upgrades.
Off:	Prevents this unit from receiving update and upgrade.

- This setting causes Incompatibilities between this unit and HEOS App.

■ Upgrade Notification

When the latest Upgrade firmware is available, a notification message is displayed on the TV screen at power on.

The notification message is displayed for about 40 seconds when the power is turned on.

On (Default):	Display upgrade message.
Off:	Do not display upgrade message.

- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".

■ Add New Feature

Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade.

Upgrade Package:	Display the items to be upgraded.
Upgrade Status:	Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.
Upgrade:	Execute the upgrade process. When the upgrade starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed.

🖉

- Information regarding the "Update" function and "Add New Feature" will be announced on the Marantz website each time related plans are defined. See the Marantz website for details about upgrades.
- When the procedure is complete, "Registered" is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, "Not Registered" is displayed.
  The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.
  The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit's ◁ and SETUP for at least 3 seconds.
- If the upgrade is not successful, "Upgrade Error" message appears in the display. See "Troubleshooting" – "Update/upgrade error messages" for information on upgrade error messages. (☞ p. 298)
  Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again.
- This menu cannot be selected when "Allow Update" is set to "Off".

Notes concerning use of "Update" and "Add New Feature"

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for an Internet connection. (☞ p. 93)
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the ⏻ on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. After about 1 minute, "Please wait" appears on the display and update restarts. If the error continues, check the network environment.

Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

■ Audio

Show the audio information for MAIN ZONE.

Sound Mode:	The currently set sound mode.
Input Signal:	The input signal type.
Format:	The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE).
Sample Rate:	The input signal's sampling frequency.
Offset:	The dialogue normalization correction value.
Flag:	This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with DTS-ES Matrix input signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals.

■ Video

Show the HDMI input/output signals and HDMI monitor information for MAIN ZONE.

HDMI Signal Info.

Resolution / Color Space / Pixel Depth

HDMI Monitor 1 / HDMI Monitor 2

Interface / Resolutions

■ ZONE

Show information about current settings.

MAIN ZONE:	This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.
ZONE2/3:	This item shows information about settings for ZONE2 and ZONE3.

■ Firmware

Version:	Displays information for the current firmware.
DTS Version:	Displays the current DTS version.

■ Notifications

Displays and sets notifications.

Also, sets whether or not to display the notification when the power is turned on.

Notification Alerts

On (Default):	Notification messages are displayed.
Off:	Notification messages are not displayed.

🖉

• Press INFO on the remote control unit to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.

SOURCE Blu-ray
SOUND Dolby TrueHD
SIGNAL Dolby TrueHD
AUDYSSEY MultEQ XT32 : Reference
Dynamic EQ : On
Dynamic Volume : Medium

INPUT SIGNAL   ACTIVE SPEAKERS

50.0
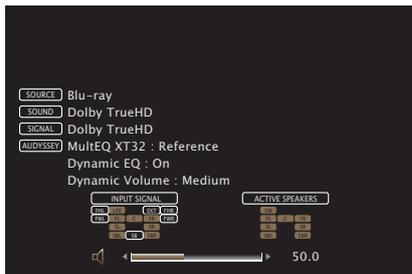
Usage Data

To help us improve our products and customer service, Marantz collects anonymous information about how you use this unit (such as frequently used input sources and sound modes and speaker settings). Marantz will never provide any information we collect to third parties.

Yes:	Provide information on the operating status of this unit.
No:	Do not provide information on the operating status of this unit.

Save & Load

Save and restore device settings by using a USB memory device.

✎

- Use a USB memory device that has at least 128 MB of free space and is formatted to FAT32. Data may not Save/Load correctly to some USB memory devices.
- It may take up to 10 minutes for data to Save/Load. Do not turn off the power until the process is complete.

■ Save Configuration

Current unit settings are stored on the USB memory device.

When the settings are saved correctly, "Saved" appears on the display and the file "config.avr" is created on the USB memory device.

✎

- Do not change the file name of the created file. Doing so will prevent the file from being recognized as a settings file when restoring.

■ Load Configuration

Settings saved on the USB memory device are restored.

When the saved settings are restored correctly, "Loaded" appears on the display and the unit automatically restarts.

Setup Lock

Protect settings from inadvertent changes.

■ Lock

On:	Turn protection on.
Off (Default):	Turn protection off.

✎

- When cancelling the setting, set "Lock" to "Off".

NOTE

- When "Lock" is set to "On", no setting items are displayed except for "Setup Lock".

Operating external devices with the remote control unit

When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers.

SET

DEVICE ↻

Input source
select buttons

CH/PAGE ▲

INFO

SMART
SELECT
1 – 4

0 – 9

AVP

OPTION

ENTER
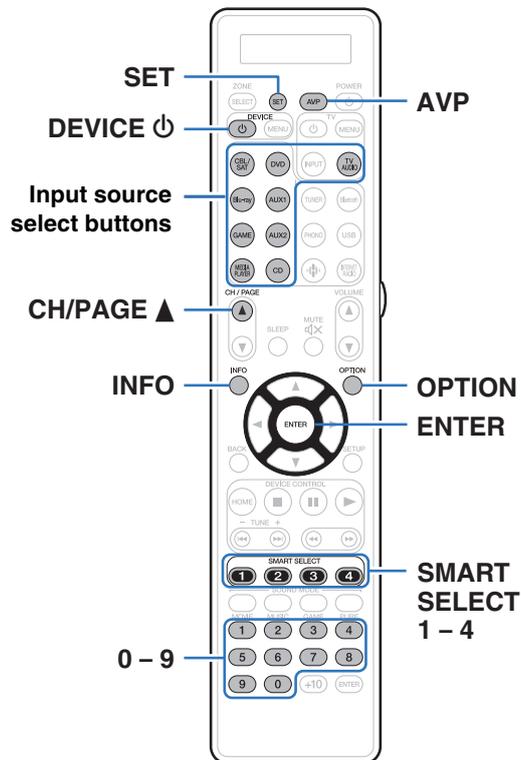
Registering preset codes

There are two methods for registering preset codes; the simple method for registering preset codes of Marantz players, the method for registering the preset numbers of other manufacturers' devices, and the method for experimenting with preset codes one by one for registration.

- "Registering Marantz players" (p. 264)
- "Registering by entering preset numbers" (p. 265)
- "Experimenting with preset codes one by one for registration" (p. 266)

■ Registering Marantz players

Use the following simple method to register the preset codes of Marantz Blu-ray Disc players, DVD players and CD players.

❏ Registering Blu-ray Disc players

1 **Press and hold down Blu-ray and OPTION until "OK" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

❏ Registering DVD players

1 **Press and hold down DVD and OPTION until "OK" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

❏ Registering CD players

1 **Press and hold down CD and OPTION until "OK" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

❏ Registering multiple players at the same time

1 **Press and hold down the SMART SELECT 1 – 4 and OPTION until "OK" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

Devices to be registered at the same time			Press and hold down the buttons
Blu-ray Disc player	DVD player	CD player	
✓	✓		SMART SELECT 1 and OPTION
✓		✓	SMART SELECT 2 and OPTION
	✓	✓	SMART SELECT 3 and OPTION
✓	✓	✓	SMART SELECT 4 and OPTION

NOTE

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate. In this case, try "Registering by entering preset numbers" (☞ <u>p. 265</u>).

■ Registering by entering preset numbers

The following table shows the device groups that can be registered for each of the input source select buttons. Check the preset number of the device you want to register beforehand in the "Remote Control Preset Codes" file.

http://manuals.marantz.com/AV8805/preset/AV8805PresetCodes.pdf

Button	Device groups that can be registered
CBL/SAT	CBL/SAT group
Blu-ray	BD/DVD group
GAME	CBL/SAT group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
MEDIA PLAYER	CBL/SAT group
DVD	BD/DVD group
AUX1	CBL/SAT group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
AUX2	CBL/SAT group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
CD	Audio group
TV AUDIO	TV group

1 **Press and hold down the input source select button that you want to register the preset code to and SET until "PRSET" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

2 **Enter the preset number (4 digits) listed for the device in the Preset Code Table using the number buttons (0 – 9) on the remote control.**

- Some manufacturers use more than one type of preset code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.
- If the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device. ()

NOTE

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

■ Experimenting with preset codes one by one for registration

1 **Switch the power on of the device for which you want to set the preset code.**

2 **Press and hold down the input source select button that you want to register the preset code to and SET until "PRSET" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

3 **Aim the remote control at the appliance and slowly alternate between pressing CH/PAGE ▲ and DEVICE ⏻ for the appliance.**
The preset code is shown in the remote control display.

4 **Stop when the appliance turns off.**

5 **Press ENTER once to lock in the code.**

✎

- Some manufacturers use more than one type of remote control code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.
- If the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device. (☞)

NOTE

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

Operating devices

To operate an external device, press the input source button registered with the preset code, followed by one of the buttons in the following tables.

✎

- When operating an external device, the display on the remote control unit shows the input source name.
- The "TV" indicator lights when the TV is being operated.
- To operate the menu of this unit, press AVP before operating the unit. The "AVP" indicator lights when this unit is being operated.

❏ TV group (TV) operation
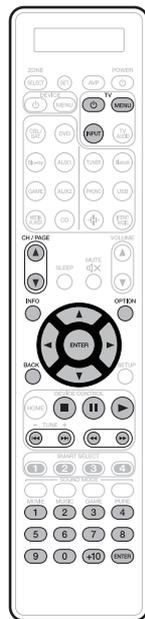
Operation buttons	Function
TV ⏻	TV power on/off
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
TV MENU	TV menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Sub menu, Option
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER(Cursor)	Enter
BACK	Back
⏮ ⏭	Skip chapter
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
⏸	Pause
■	Stop
0 – 9, +10	Channel selection

✎

- TV ⏻ and TV INPUT buttons can be operated at any time without pressing the TV button.

❑ DVD group
(DVD player / DVD recorder) operation

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	(Popup) Menu
INFO	Information
OPTION	Top menu
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
■	Stop
❙❙	Pause
▶	Playback
❙◀◀ ▶▶❙	Skip chapter
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

❑ CD group
(CD player / CD recorder) operation
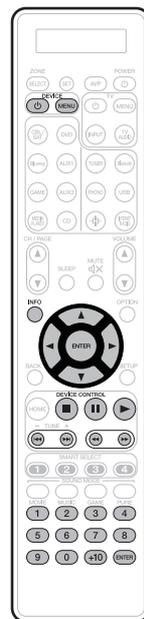
Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	(Popup) Menu
INFO	Information
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
■	Stop
❙❙	Pause
▶	Playback
❙◀◀ ▶▶❙	Skip chapter
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

✎
- Depending on the device, the DEVICE ⏻ button only performs the power-on operation.

❏ CBL/SAT group
(Set top box for satellite (SAT)/cable TV (CBL)/
Media player/IP TV) operation

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	Menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
HOME	Home menu
■	Stop
❙❙	Pause
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶❙	Skip chapter
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
0 – 9, +10	Channel selection

❏ BD group
(Blu-ray Disc player) operation

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	(Popup) Menu
INFO	Information
OPTION	Top menu
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
HOME	Home menu
■	Stop
❙❙	Pause
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶❙	Skip chapter
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

🖉

• Depending on the device, the DEVICE ⏻ button only performs the power-on operation.

Checking registered preset codes

1 **Press and hold an input source select button for which you want to check the preset code and the SET button until the display on the remote control unit shows "PRSET".**

2 **Press INFO.**

The set code is shown for 3 seconds in the remote control display.

Initializing registered preset codes

1 **Press and hold down AVP and OPTION until "OK" indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

Operating learning function
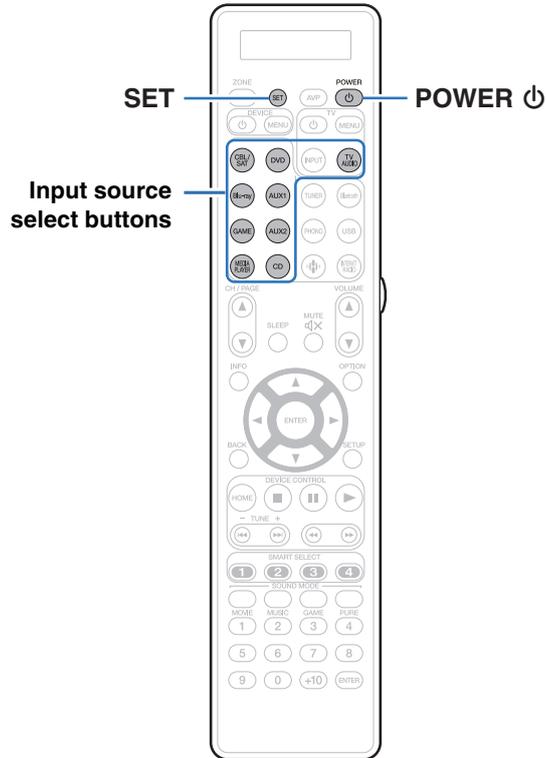
If the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device.

SET — **POWER** Φ

Input source select buttons

Remembering remote control codes from other devices

1 **Place the Marantz remote control and remote control from the other device approximately 5 cm apart, with the remote control signal transmission sections facing each other.**

2 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

3 **Press input source select buttons to select the input source.**

The input source is shown in the remote control display.

4 **Select the button to be learned.**

LEARN indicator lights up.

5 **Press and hold the button that you want to register on the other remote control until "OK" is displayed on the Marantz remote control display.**

- If "NG" is shown on the remote control display, perform step 4 again.

6 **Repeat steps 4 and 5 to learn other buttons for the same input source.**

7 **When programming of the remote control unit is completed, press SET.**

The LEARN indicator turns off, and the remote control unit exits learn mode.

✎
- There are some remote control units that cannot be programmed, or even if they can be programmed, they may not operate correctly. If this happens, use the remote control unit supplied with the AV equipment to operate it.
- If the remote control memory becomes full, "FULL" is shown on the remote control display. If you want to learn the code, you should erase other learned button.

NOTE
- The learning function is unavailable for all ZONE SELECT, SET, AVP, POWER Φ, VOLUME ▲▼, SMART SELECT, SOUND MODE and input source select buttons in any mode.
- If no buttons are pressed for approximately 1 minutes while in the LEARN mode, the remote control unit automatically exits from the LEARN mode.

Delete saved remote control codes

Codes can be erased in three ways: by buttons, sources, and by all memory contents.

■ Delete remote control codes for each button

1 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

2 **Press input source select buttons to select the input source you want to delete.**
The input source is shown in the remote control display.

3 **Press and hold POWER Ⅹ and press the learned button to be erased twice.**
"ERASE" is shown in the remote control display.

4 **Press SET.**
- The LEARN indicator turn off.

■ Delete remote control codes for each input source

1 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

2 **Press and hold POWER Ⅹ and press the learned input source select buttons to be erased twice.**
"ERASE" is shown in the remote control display.

3 **Press SET.**
- The LEARN indicator turn off.

■ Delete remote control codes for all input sources

1 **Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**

2 **Press and hold POWER Ⅹ and press AVP twice.**
"ERASE" is shown in the remote control display.

3 **Press SET.**
- The LEARN indicator turn off.

Setting the back light

SET
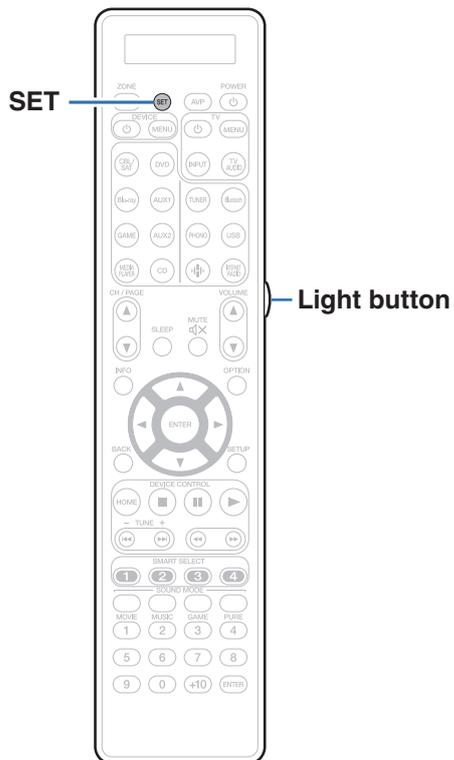
Light button

You can turn off the backlight of the remote control unit.

- Backlight is set on in the factory settings.

Disabling the backlight

1 **Press and hold both SET and Light button until "OFF" indicator flashes twice.**

Turning the backlight on

1 **Press and hold both SET and Light button until "ON" indicator flashes twice.**

Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit
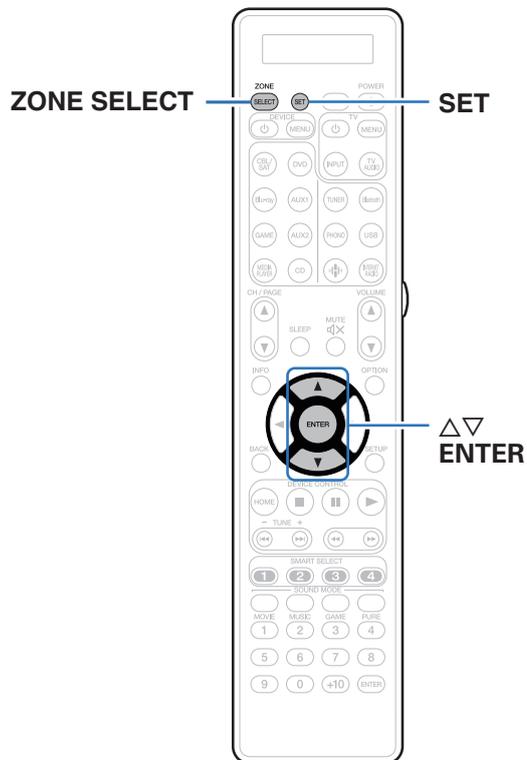
When the ZONE SELECT is pressed, only the set zone can be operated with the remote control unit.

This is useful for preventing mistaken operation.

- The factory setting is "M23".

1 Press and hold ZONE SELECT and SET for at least 3 seconds.

2 Use △▽ to set the zone to be used and press ENTER.

"SET" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

Remote control unit display	Zone to be used
M	MAIN ZONE only
M2	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2
M23	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3

ZONE SELECT — SET

△▽
ENTER

■ Contents

Tips

Troubleshooting

Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake

- Set the volume upper limit for "Volume Limit" in the menu beforehand. This prevents children or others from increasing the volume too much by mistake. You can set this for each zone. ("Volume" (v p. 186), "Volume Limit" (v p. 253))

I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on

- By default, the volume setting when power was previously set to standby on this unit is applied at next power on with no change. To use a fixed volume level, set the volume level at power on for "Power On Volume" in the menu. You can set this for each zone. ("Volume" (v p. 186), "Power On Volume" (v p. 253))

I want to have the subwoofer always output audio

- Depending on the input signals and sound mode, the subwoofer may not output audio. When "Subwoofer Mode" in the menu is set to "LFE+Main", you can have the subwoofer always output audio. (v p. 239)

I want to make human voices in the movies clearer

- Select a setting that makes the dialog easier to hear in the option menu "Dialog Enhancer". (v p. 139)

I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level

- Set "Dynamic EQ" in the menu to "On". This setting corrects the frequency characteristics to allow you to enjoy clear sound without the bass being lost even during playback at a lower volume level. (v p. 188)

I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies

- Set "Dynamic Volume" in the menu. Volume level changes (between quiet scenes and loud scenes) in TV shows or movies are automatically adjusted to your desired level. (v p. 189)

I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one

- Perform Audyssey® Setup. This automatically makes the optimized speaker settings for the new listening environment. (p. 211)

I want to combine a desired video with the current music

- Set "Video Select" in the option menu to "On". You can combine the current music with your desired video source from a Set-top Box or DVD, etc. while listening to music from the Tuner, CD, Phono, HEOS Music, USB or Bluetooth. (p. 142)

I want to skip unused input sources

- Set unused input sources for "Hide Sources" in the menu. This allows you to skip unused input sources when turning the INPUT SELECTOR knob on this unit. (p. 209)

I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.

- Set "All Zone Stereo" in the option menu to "Start". You can simultaneously play back music in another room (ZONE2, ZONE3) that is played back in MAIN ZONE. (p. 144)

I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I'm playing a game on my game console

- When the video is delayed against button operations with the controller on the game console, set "Video Mode" in the menu to "Game". (p. 200)

I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control

- Select "AV Receiver" in a TV menu such as "Input"＊ or "Operate Connected HDMI Device"＊. The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV. This Smart Menu can be operated using the remote control of your TV.

＊ The selection method differs depending on your TV. See the owner's manual of your TV for details.

Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. **Are the connections correct?**
2. **Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?**
3. **Are the other devices operating properly?**

✏

- If steps 1 to 3 above do not improve the problem, restarting the device may improve the problem.
  Continue pressing the ⏻ button on the unit until "Restart" appears in the display, or remove and re-insert the power cord of the unit.

If this unit does not operate properly, check the corresponding symptoms in this section.

If the symptoms do not match any of those described here, consult your dealer as it could be due to a fault in this unit. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact the store where you purchased this unit.

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off

Power does not turn on.

- Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet. (☞ p. 97)

Power automatically turns off.

- The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again. (☞ p. 160)
- "Auto Standby" is set. "Auto Standby" is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable "Auto Standby", set "Auto Standby" on the menu to "Off". (☞ p. 255)

The power to this unit does not turn off when you press the Power operation button. "ZONE2 On" or "ZONE3 On" appears on the display.

- Power in either ZONE2 or ZONE3 is on. To turn off the power of this unit (standby), press the ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF button on the main unit or press the ZONE SELECT button on the remote control and select a zone before pressing the POWER ⏻ button.

The power to this unit does not turn off when you press the Power operation button. "HEOS On" appears on the display.

- A HEOS device on the same network is playing an input source from this unit. Stop playback on the HEOS device when turning this unit off (setting it to standby). The power of this unit will turn off automatically after around 20 minutes.

Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit

Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit.

- Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries. (☞ p. 9)
- Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°. (☞ p. 9)
- Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.
- Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks. (☞ p. 9)
- The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light.
- The operation target zone does not correspond to the zone setting specified on the remote control unit. Press ZONE SELECT to select the zone to operate. (☞ p. 178)
- The remote control unit operating mode is used to operate other devices. Press AVP to set the operating mode to AVP. (☞ p. 268)
- When using a 3D video device, the remote control unit of this unit may not function due to effects of infrared communications between units (such as TV and glasses for 3D viewing). In this case, adjust the direction of units with the 3D communications function and their distance to ensure they do not affect operations from the remote control unit of this unit.

Display on this unit shows nothing

Display is off.

- Set "Dimmer" on the menu to something other than "Off". (☞ p. 256)
- When the sound mode is set to "Pure Direct", the display is off. (☞ p. 147)

No sound comes out

No sound comes out of speakers.

- Check the connections for all devices. (v p. 44)
- Insert connection cables all the way in.
- Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.
- Check cables for damage.
- Check the speaker connections and configurations. (v p. 49)
- Check the connections for PRE OUT connectors. (v p. 44)
- Check whether the audio device power is turned on. (v p. 79)
- Check that a proper input source is selected. (v p. 99)
- Adjust the volume. (v p. 100)
- Cancel the mute mode. (v p. 100)
- Check the digital audio input connector setting. (v p. 206)
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, the digital audio output is set to off by default.
- When a headphone is plugged into the PHONES jack on the main unit, sound is not output from the PRE OUT connector.

No sound comes out when using the DVI-D connection.

- When this unit is connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector, no sound is output. Make a separate audio connection.

No sound comes out of a TV that is connected via HDMI.

- Audio signals input to 7.1CH IN connectors on this unit cannot be output to the TV.

Desired sound does not come out

The volume does not increase.

- The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using "Limit" on the menu. (⇒ p. 186)
- Appropriate volume correction processing is performed according to the input audio format and settings, so the volume may not reach the upper limit.

No sound comes out with the HDMI connection.

- Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. (⇒ p. 80)
- When outputting HDMI audio signals from the speakers of a power amp connected to this unit, set "HDMI Audio Out" in the menu to "AVP". To output from the TV, set it to "TV". (⇒ p. 194)
- When using the HDMI Control function, check that the audio output is set to the AV amplifier on the TV. (⇒ p. 157)

No sound comes out of a specific speaker.

- Check that PRE OUT cables and speaker cables are properly connected.
- Check that a selection other than "None" is set for the "Speaker Config." setting in menu. (⇒ p. 230)
- Check the "Assign Mode" setting in the menu. (⇒ p. 222)
- When the sound mode is "Stereo" and "Virtual", audio is only output from the front speakers and subwoofer.

No sound is produced from subwoofer.

- Check the subwoofer connections.
- Turn on the subwoofer's power.
- Set "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu to "1 spkr" or "2 spkrs". (⇒ p. 230)
- When "Speaker Config." - "Front" in the menu is set to "Large", depending on the input signal and the sound mode, no sound may be output from the subwoofer. (⇒ p. 230)
- When no subwoofer audio signal (LFE) is included in the input signals, no sound may be output from the subwoofer. (⇒ p. 239)
- You can make the subwoofer always output sound by setting the "Subwoofer Mode" to "LFE+Main". (⇒ p. 239)

DTS sound is not output.

- Check that the digital audio output setting on the connected device is set to "DTS".

Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.

- Make HDMI connections. (℃ p. 85)
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, "PCM" is set by default.

DTS Neural:X mode cannot be selected.

- DTS Neural:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.

Dolby Surround mode cannot be selected.

- Dolby Surround cannot be selected when using the headphones.

Sound modes other than "Stereo" or "Direct" cannot be selected.

- Only "Stereo" or "Direct" can be selected for the sound mode if Headphone:X signals are input.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected.

- These cannot be selected when you have not performed Audyssey® Setup. (℃ p. 211)
- Switch to a sound mode other than "Direct" or "Pure Direct". (℃ p. 147)
- Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected when sound mode is "DTS Virtual:X" or sound mode that have "+ Virtual:X" in the sound mode name.
- These cannot be selected when using the headphones.

"M-DAX" cannot be selected.

- Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, "M-DAX" cannot be used. (℃ p. 184)
- Switch to a sound mode other than "Direct" or "Pure Direct". (℃ p. 147)

No audio is output from PRE OUT for ZONE2/ZONE3.

- In ZONE2/ZONE3, the audio can be played back when signals input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) are in 2ch PCM format.
- In ZONE2, the audio can be played back when signals input from the HDMI connector are in 2ch PCM format. To play back the audio in ZONE2 irrespective of the input signal format, set "HDMI Audio" in the menu to "PCM". Depending on the played back device, the audio may not be played back even with this setting. In that case, set the audio format to "PCM (2ch)" on the played back device. (℃ p. 252)
- When listening to audio from a Bluetooth device in ZONE2/ZONE3, remove any obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit and use it within a range of about 98.4 ft/30 m.

Sound is interrupted or noise occurs

During playback from the Internet radio or USB memory device, sound is occasionally interrupted.

- When the transfer speed of the USB memory device is slow, sound may occasionally be interrupted.
- The network communication speed is slow or the radio station is busy.

When making a call on iPhone, noise occurs in audio output on this unit.

- When making a call, keep a distance of 0.7 ft/20 cm or longer between iPhone and this unit.

Noise often occurs in FM/AM broadcasting.

- Change the antenna orientation or position. (v p. 91)
- Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit.
- Use an outdoor antenna. (v p. 91)
- Separate the antenna from other connection cables. (v p. 91)

The sounds appear to be distorted.

- Lower the volume. (v p. 100)

Sound cuts out when using Wi-Fi connection.

- The frequency band used by the wireless LAN is also used by microwave ovens, cordless telephones, wireless game controllers and other wireless LAN devices. Using such devices at the same time as this unit may cause sound to cut out due to electronic interference. Sound cut out can be improved using the following methods. (v p. 93)
  - Install devices that cause interference away from this unit.
  - Turn off the power supply to devices that cause interference.
  - Change the settings of the router channel to which this unit is connected to. (See the instruction manual of the wireless router for details on how to change the channel.)
  - Switch to a wired LAN connection.
- Particularly when you play back large music files, depending on your wireless LAN environment, the playback sound may be interrupted. In this case, make the wired LAN connection. (v p. 244)

No video is shown on the TV

No picture appears.

- Check the connections for all devices. ()
- Insert connection cables all the way in.
- Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.
- Check cables for damage.
- Match the input settings to the input connector of the TV connected to this unit. ()
- Check that the proper input source is selected. ()
- Check the video input connector setting. ()
- Check that the resolution of the player corresponds to that of the TV. ()
- Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly. ()
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.
- The HDMI signal cannot be converted to an analog signal. Use analog connections. ()
- To play back a 4K (60/50Hz) video, use a "High Speed HDMI Cable" or an "High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet". In order to achieve a higher fidelity for 4K (60/50Hz) videos, it is recommended to use a "Premium High Speed HDMI Cables" or an "Premium High Speed HDMI Cables with Ethernet" that has an HDMI Premium Certified Cable label on the product package.

No video is shown on the TV with the DVI-D connection.

- With the DVI-D connection, on some device combinations, devices may not function properly due to the copy guard copyright protection (HDCP). ()

No video from an input source such as a game console is shown on the TV.

- When special video signals are input from a game console, etc., the Video Conversion function may not function. Connect the input connector to the monitor output connector of the same type.

While the menu is being displayed, no video is shown on the TV.

- The video being played will not appear in the background of the menu when the menu is operated during playback of the following video signals.
  - Some images of 3D video contents
  - Computer resolution images (example: VGA)
  - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3
  - 4K video
  - Some kind of HDR signals

When using HDMI ZONE2, the video output in MAIN ZONE is interrupted.

- When ZONE2 is operated with the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, video in MAIN ZONE may be interrupted.

The menu screen is not displayed on the TV

The menu screen or status information screen is not displayed on the TV.

- The menu screen is only displayed on this unit and a TV connected with an HDMI cable. If this unit is connected to a TV using a different video output connector, operate while watching the display on this unit.
- The status information will not appear on the TV when the following video signals are being played.
  - Some images of 3D video content
  - Computer resolution images (example: VGA)
  - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3
  - Some kind of HDR signals
- When a 2D video is converted to a 3D video on the TV, the menu screen or status information screen is not displayed properly. ()
- In the pure direct playback mode, the menu screen or status information is not displayed. Switch to a sound mode other than the pure direct mode. ()
- Set the "TV Format" setting in the menu to a selection that is appropriate for the TV. ()

AirPlay cannot be played back

The AirPlay icon is not displayed on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.

- This unit and PC / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect it to the same LAN as this unit. (☞ p. 93)
- The firmware on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is not compatible with AirPlay. Update the firmware to the latest version.

Audio is not output.

- The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is set to the minimum level. The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is linked with the volume on this unit. Set a proper volume level.
- The AirPlay playback is not performed, or this unit is not selected. Click the AirPlay icon on the iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad screen and select this unit. (☞ p. 134)

Audio is interrupted during the AirPlay playback on iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.

- Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.
- Some external factors may be affecting the wireless connection. Modify the network environment by taking measures such as shortening the distance from the wireless LAN access point.

iTunes cannot be played back through the remote control unit.

- Enable the "Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers" setting on iTunes. Then, you can perform playback, pause, and skip operations through the remote control unit.

USB memory devices cannot be played back

USB memory device is not recognized.

- Disconnect and reconnect the USB memory device. ()
- Mass storage class compatible USB memory devices are supported.
- This unit does not support a connection through a USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.
- The USB memory device must be formatted to FAT16 or FAT32.
- Not all USB memory devices are guaranteed to work. Some USB memory devices are not recognized. When using a type of portable hard disc drive compatible with the USB connection that requires power from an AC adapter, use the AC adapter that came with the drive.

Files on the USB memory device are not displayed.

- Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed. ()
- This unit is able to display files in a maximum of eight folder layers. A maximum of 5000 files (folders) can also be displayed for each layer. Modify the folder structure of the USB memory device.
- When multiple partitions exist on the USB memory device, only files on the first partition are displayed.

iOS and Android devices are not recognized.

- The USB port of this unit does not support playback from iOS and Android devices.

Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.

- Files are created in a format that is not supported by this unit. Check the formats supported by this unit. ()
- You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.
- Playback may not be possible if the album art file size exceeds 2 MB.

Bluetooth cannot be played back

Bluetooth devices cannot be connected to this unit.

- The Bluetooth function in the Bluetooth device has not been enabled. See the Owner's Manual of the Bluetooth device to enable the Bluetooth function.
- Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.
- The Bluetooth device cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.
- Turn the power of the Bluetooth device off and on again, and then try again.

The sound is cut off.

- Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.
- Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit.
- To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.
- Reconnect the Bluetooth device.

The Internet radio cannot be played back

A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.

- The LAN cable is not properly connected, or the network is disconnected. Check the connection status. (⟨⟩ p. 93)
- Perform the network diagnostic mode.

Internet Radio cannot be played.

- The selected radio station is broadcasting in a format that is not supported by this unit. Formats that can be played back in this unit are MP3, WMA and AAC. (⟨⟩ p. 309)
- The firewall function is enabled on the router. Check the firewall setting.
- The IP address is not properly set. (⟨⟩ p. 246)
- Check the power of the router is on.
- To obtain the IP address automatically, enable the DHCP server function on the router. Also, set the DHCP setting to "On" on this unit. (⟨⟩ p. 246)
- To obtain the IP address manually, set the IP address on this unit. (⟨⟩ p. 246)
- Some radio stations broadcast silently during some time period. In this case, no audio is output. Wait for a while and select the same radio station, or select another radio station. (⟨⟩ p. 119)
- The selected radio station is not in service. Select a radio station in service.

Cannot connect to favorite radio stations.

- Radio station is not currently in service. Register radio stations in service.

Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back

Files stored on a computer cannot be played.

- Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format. (☞ p. 308)
- Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.
- The USB port of this unit cannot be used for connection to a computer.
- Media sharing settings on the server or NAS do not allow this unit. Change the settings to allow this unit. For details, see the owner's manual of the server or NAS.

Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.

- The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings.
- Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.
- Server is not running. Launch the server.
- IP address of this unit is wrong. Check the IP address of this unit. (☞ p. 243)

Music files on PC cannot be played back.

- Even if PC is connected to the USB port on this unit, music files on it cannot be played back. Connect PC to this unit through the network. (☞ p. 93)

Files on PC or NAS are not displayed.

- Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed. (☞ p. 308)

Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.

- If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.
- If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.
- If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.

Various online services cannot be played

Various online services cannot be played.

- The online service may have been discontinued.

The HDMI Control function does not work

The HDMI Control function does not work.

- Check that "HDMI Control" in the menu is set to "On". (☞ p. 196)
- You cannot operate devices that are not compatible with the HDMI Control function. In addition, depending on the connected device or the settings, the HDMI Control function may not work. In this case, operate the external device directly. (☞ p. 157)
- Check that the HDMI Control function setting is enabled on all devices connected to this unit. (☞ p. 157)
- When you make connection related changes such as connecting an additional HDMI device, the link operation settings may be initialized. Turn off this unit and devices connected via HDMI, and turn them on again. (☞ p. 157)
- The HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is not compatible with the HDMI Control function. Use the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector to connect to the TV. (☞ p. 80)

Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network

Cannot connect to the network.

- The network name (SSID), password and encryption setting have not been set up correctly. Configure the network settings according to the setting details of this unit. ()
- Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN access point and remove any obstructions to improve access first before re-connecting again. Place the unit away from microwave ovens and other network access points.
- Configure the access point channel settings away from channels that are being used by other networks.
- This unit is not compatible with WEP (TSN).

Cannot connect to a WPS Router.

- Check that the WPS mode of the router is operating.
- Press the WPS button on the router and then press the "Connect" button displayed on the TV within 2 minutes.
- A router/settings that are compatible with WPS 2.0 standards are required. Set the encryption time to "None", "WPA-PSK (AES)" or WPA2-PSK (AES). ()
- If the router encryption method is WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-TKIP, you cannot connect by using the WPS button on the router. In this case, use the "Scan Networks" or "Manual" method to connect.

Cannot connect to the network using iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.

- Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad firmware to the latest version.
- When configuring the settings via a wireless connection, iOS 7 or later needs to be supported.

When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly

When using MAIN ZONE, video output is interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.

- With the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, when you operate MAIN ZONE, video may be interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.

When using HDMI ZONE2, no video or audio is output from the TV in ZONE2.

- Check that the power is on for ZONE2. (　p. 172)
- Check the input source for ZONE2. (　p. 172)
- The AUX1-HDMI connector on the front panel does not support the HDMI ZONE2 function.
- In ZONE2, playback is only possible when the input signals are HDMI signals.
- When the TV does not support the input audio format, audio is not output. Set the audio format to "PCM" on the playback device. Alternatively, set "ZONE2 Setup" - "HDMI Audio" in the menu to "PCM". (　p. 252)
- When the TV is not compatible with the resolution of the input video, no video is output. Set the output resolution on the playback device to a resolution that is compatible with the TV.

When using HDMI ZONE2, MAIN ZONE audio is played back as PCM.

- When the same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, the audio format is limited according to the specifications of the TV in ZONE2.

Update/upgrade error messages

If an update/upgrade is interrupted or fails, an error message appears.

Display	Description
Connection failed. Please check your network, then try again.	The network connection is unstable. Connection to the server failed. Check your network environment and try the update again.
Update failed. Please check your network, then try again.	The download of the firmware failed. Check your network environment and try the update again.
Upgrade failed. Please check your network, then try again.	The download of the firmware failed. Check your network environment and try the upgrade again.
Please check your network, unplug and reconnect the power cord, and try again.	The update failed. Press and hold the Φ on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. The update restarts automatically.
Please contact customer service in your area.	This unit may be broken. Contact our Customer Service Center in your area.

Resetting factory settings

If the indicators are incorrect or the unit cannot be operated, restarting the unit may improve the problem. We recommend restarting the unit before returning the settings to the default settings. ()

If the operations are not improved by restarting the unit, follow the steps below.

Various settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.
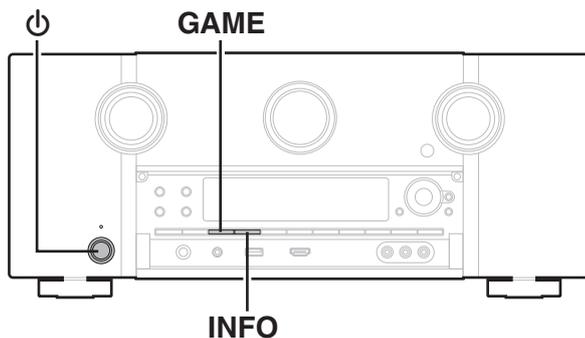
1 Turn off the power using Φ.

2 Press Φ while simultaneously pressing GAME and INFO.

3 Remove your fingers from the two buttons when "Initialized" appears on the display.

✎
- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the "Save & Load" function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. ()

Resetting network settings

If network contents cannot be played or the unit cannot connect to the network, restarting the unit may improve the problem. We recommend restarting the unit before returning the settings to the default settings. (☞)

If the operations are not improved by restarting the unit, follow the steps below.

Network settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.

However, the menu "Amp Assign", "Speaker Config." and "Video" settings are not reset.
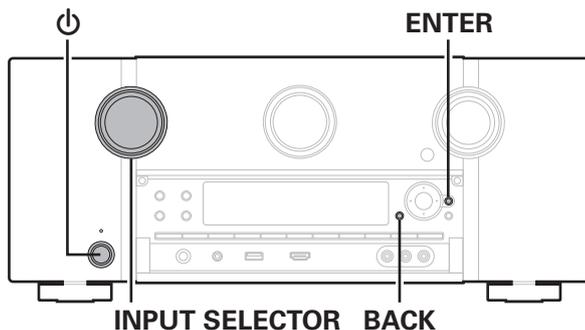
1 Press Φ to turn on power to the unit.

2 Turn INPUT SELECTOR to select "HEOS Music".

3 Press and hold the main unit's BACK and ENTER at the same time for at least 3 seconds.

4 Remove your fingers from the two buttons when "Network Reset..." appears on the display.

5 "Completed" is shown in the display when reset is complete.

✎

- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the "Save & Load" function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. (☞)

NOTE

- Do not turn the power off until reset is complete.

About HDMI

HDMI is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier.

With the HDMI connection, high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray Disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio) can be transmitted, which is not possible with the analog video transmission.

Furthermore, in the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable, while in conventional connections it is necessary to provide audio and video cables separately for connection between devices. This allows you to simplify the wiring configuration that tends to be quite complex in a home theater system.

This unit supports the following HDMI functions.

- **Deep Color**

  An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB or YCbCr, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

  Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

- **x.v.Color**

  This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors.

  "x.v.Color" is trademark of Sony Corporation.

- **3D**

  This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI. To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

- **4K**

  This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 x 2160 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

- **Content Type**

  It automatically makes settings suitable for the video output type (content information).

- **Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color**

  The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

- **sYCC601 color**

  Each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

- **Auto Lip Sync**

  This function can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

  Use a TV that is compatible with the Auto Lip Sync function.

- **HDMI Pass Through**

  Even when the power to this unit is set to standby, signals input from the HDMI input connector are output to a TV or other device that is connected to the HDMI output connector.

- **HDMI Control**

  If you connect the unit and an HDMI Control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI Control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

  - Power off link

    This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.

  - Audio output destination switching

    From the TV, you can switch whether to output audio from the TV or the AV pre tuner.

  - Volume adjustment

    You can adjust this unit's volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.

  - Input source switching

    You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.

    When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.

- **ARC (Audio Return Channel)**

  This function transmits audio signals from the TV to this unit through the HDMI cable and plays back the audio from the TV on this unit based on the HDMI Control function.

  If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.

  In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.

■ Supported audio formats

2-channel Linear PCM	2-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Multi-channel Linear PCM	7.1-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream	Dolby Digital / DTS / Dolby Atmos / Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Digital Plus / DTS:X / DTS-HD Master Audio / DTS-HD High Resolution Audio / DTS Express
DSD	2-channel – 5.1-channel, 2.8 MHz

■ Supported video signals

- 480i
- 576i
- 720p 60/50Hz
- 1080p 60/50/24Hz

- 480p
- 576p
- 1080i 60/50Hz
- 4K 60/50/30/25/24 Hz

Copyright protection system

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD video or DVD video via HDMI connection, both this unit and the TV or player must to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.

$\rlap{\diagdown}\oslash$

- When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with the Deep Color, 4K and ARC functions, use a "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" that bears the HDMI logo.

Video conversion function

This unit automatically converts the input video signals as shown in the diagram before outputting them to the TV.
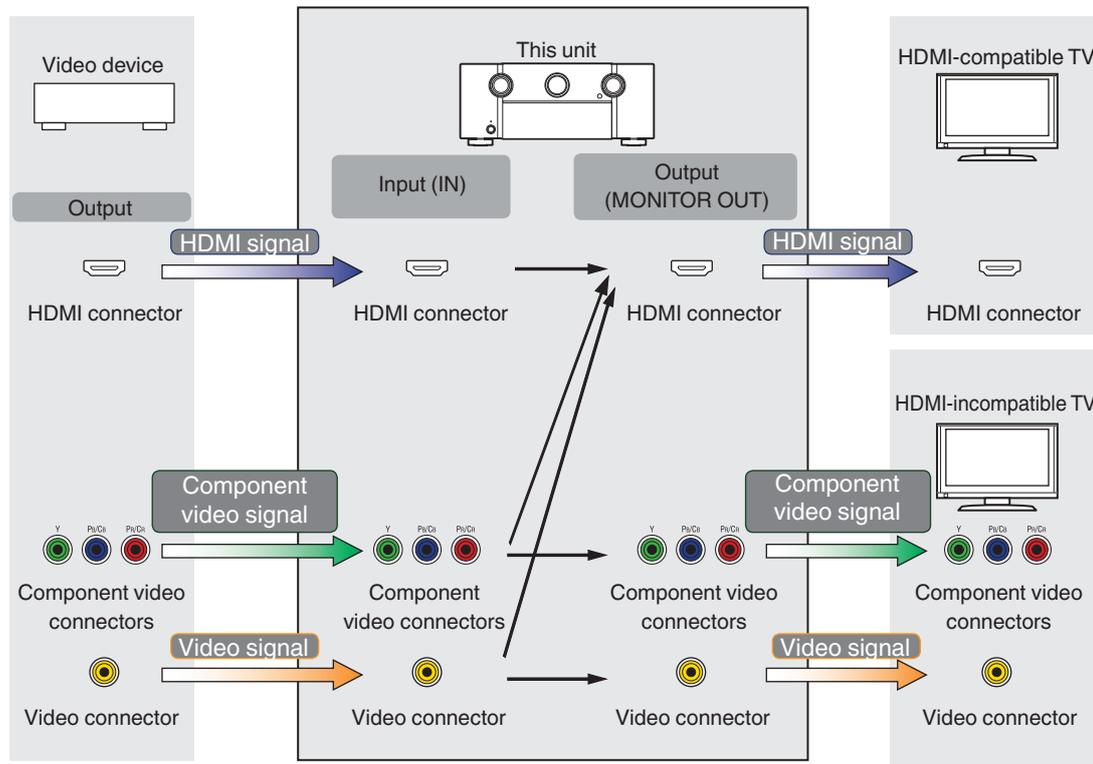
- The MAIN ZONE Video Conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.

This unit can convert the input video signals to the resolution that is set for "Resolution" in the menu before outputting them to the TV. ()

Input signal	Output signal	HDMI							
		480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p	1080p 24Hz	4K 30/25/24Hz	4K 60/50Hz
HDMI	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	720p			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080i			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p 24Hz					✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p					✓	✓	✓	✓
	4K 30/25/24Hz							✓	
	4K 60/50Hz								✓ *
Component Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	720p			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080i			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p					✓	✓	✓	✓
Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

＊ The HDMI connector on the front panel supports YCbCr 4:2:0 format only.

Playing back a USB memory devices

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/Apple Lossless/DSD) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.

■ Compatible formats

	Sampling frequency	Channel	Bit rate	Extension
WMA∗1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC∗1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a/.mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.flac
Apple Lossless∗2	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8/5.6 MHz	2-channel	–	.dsf/.dff

∗1   Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
      Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

∗2   The Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC) decoder is distributed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0).

■ Maximum number of playable files and folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item	Media	USB memory device
Memory capacity		FAT16 : 2 GB, FAT32 : 2 TB
Number of folder directory levels *1		8 levels
Number of folders		500
Number of files*2		5000

*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

Playing back a Bluetooth device

This unit supports the following Bluetooth profile.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile):
  When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, monaural and stereo sound data can be streamed at a high quality.
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile):
  When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, the Bluetooth device can be operated from this unit.

■ About Bluetooth communications

Radio waves broadcast from this unit may interfere with the operation of medical devices. Make sure you turn off the power of this unit and Bluetooth device in the following locations as radio wave interference may cause malfunctions.

- Hospitals, trains, aircraft, petrol kiosks and places where flammable gases are generated
- Near automatic doors and fire alarms

Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC/Apple Lossless/DSD) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

  For playing mentioned audio formats via a network a server software, for example Twonky Media Server or jRiver Media Server, needs to be installed on your computer or NAS for full support. There are other server software available too. Please check supported formats.

■ Specifications of supported files

	Sampling frequency	Channel	Bit rate	Extension
WMA∗1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC∗1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a/.mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.flac
Apple Lossless∗2	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8/5.6 MHz	2-channel	–	.dsf/.dff

∗1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
   Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

∗2 The Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC) decoder is distributed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0).

Playing back Internet Radio

■ Playable broadcast station specifications

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4

Personal memory plus function

The most recently used settings (input mode, HDMI output mode, sound mode, tone control, channel level, MultEQ® XT32, Dynamic EQ, Dynamic Volume, M-DAX and audio delay, etc.) are saved for each input source.

$\rlcorner$

- "Surround Parameter" settings are stored for each sound mode.

Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.

Sound modes and channel output

○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of "Speaker Config.". (v p. 230)

Sound mode	Channel output																
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Wide L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Surround Height L/R	Center Height	Top Surround	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Subwoofer
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel)	○																◎*6
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5				◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
DSD Direct (2-channel)	○																◎*6
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎														◎
Stereo	○																◎
Dolby Atmos	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎				◎	◎	◎	◎
Dolby TrueHD	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5											◎
Dolby Digital Plus	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5											◎
Dolby Digital	○	◎	◎														◎
Dolby Surround *1	○	◎	◎	◎*7		◎	◎	◎	◎	◎				◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS:X *2	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎		◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS-HD	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5											◎
DTS Express	○	◎	◎	◎													◎
DTS 96/24	○	◎	◎	◎													◎
DTS Surround	○	◎	◎	◎													◎
DTS Neural:X *2 *3	○	◎	◎	◎		◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Virtual:X *4	○	◎	◎	◎													◎
Auro-3D	○	◎	◎	◎		◎				◎*8	◎	◎*9	◎*10	◎*11	◎*11	◎*11	◎
Auro-2D Surround	○	◎	◎	◎													◎
Multi Ch In	○	◎	◎	◎*5													◎
Multi Ch Stereo	○	◎	◎	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12	◎*12*13	◎*12*13	◎*12	◎*12	◎
Virtual	○																◎

*1 - *13 : "Sound modes and channel output" (v p. 311)

∗1　The applicable sound mode includes "Dolby Surround" and sound modes that have "+Dolby Surround" in the sound mode name.
∗2　Audio can be played through a maximum of 11-channels when 11 speakers or more (excluding the subwoofer) are installed.
∗3　The applicable sound mode includes "DTS Neural:X" and sound modes that have "+Neural:X" in the sound mode name.
∗4　The applicable sound mode includes "DTS Virtual:X" and sound modes that have "+Virtual:X" in the sound mode name.
∗5　A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
∗6　Audio is output when "Subwoofer Mode" in the menu is set to "LFE+Main". (☞ p. 239)
∗7　Audio is not output when "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" in the menu is set to "1 spkr". (☞ p. 231)
∗8　For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.
∗9　This is output if an Auro-3D.
∗10　This is output if an Auro-3D signal is input and the input signal contains Top Surround.
∗11　For the best Auro-3D experience Front Height and Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
∗12　Audio is output from the speakers specified in the "Surround Parameter" – "Speaker Select" settings. (☞ p. 183)
∗13　Audio is not output when connecting to the HEIGHT 4/FRONT WIDE pre-out connector to use the Center Height or Top Surround speaker.

Sound modes and surround parameters

Sound mode	Surround Parameter										
	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management *2	Dynamic Compression *3	Dialog Control *4	Low Frequency Effects *5	Speaker Select *6	Center Spread	DTS Neural:X	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength	Subwoofer
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *1		○	○								○*7
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *1		○	○	○	○						
DSD Direct (2-channel)											○*7
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)											
Stereo		○	○	○	○						○*8
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○		○						
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○		○						
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○		○						
Dolby Digital	○	○	○		○						
Dolby Surround	○	○	○				○				
DTS:X	○		○	○	○			○			
DTS-HD	○				○						
DTS Express	○				○						
DTS 96/24	○				○						
DTS Surround	○		○		○						
DTS Neural:X	○	○	○								
DTS Virtual:X	○		○								
Auro-3D	○				○				○*9	○*9	
Auro-2D Surround	○				○						
Multi Ch In	○				○						
Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○	○	○	○					
Virtual		○	○	○	○						

*1 - *9 : "Sound modes and surround parameters" ()

Sound mode	Dialog Enhancer	Tone *10	Subwoofer Level Adjust *11	Audyssey				M-DAX *16	Bass Sync *17
				MultEQ® XT32 *12*13	Dynamic EQ *14*15	Dynamic Volume *14*15	Audyssey LFC™ *14*15		
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *1			○*7						
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *1			○						
DSD Direct (2-channel)			○*7						
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)			○						
Stereo	○	○	○*8	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
Dolby Digital	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
Dolby Surround	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS:X	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS-HD	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS Express	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS 96/24	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS Surround	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS Neural:X	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Virtual:X	○	○	○	○				○	
Auro-3D	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Auro-2D Surround	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Multi Ch In	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Virtual		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

*1, *7, *8, *10 - *17: "Sound modes and surround parameters" ()

∗1 During playback in Pure Direct mode, the surround parameters are the same as in Direct mode.

∗2 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is played.

∗3 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or DTS signal is played.

∗4 This item can be selected when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

∗5 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.

∗6 This item can be selected when Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are used.

∗7 This setting is available when "Subwoofer Mode" in the menu is set to "LFE+Main". (☞ p. 239)

∗8 This item can be set when "Front" is set to "Small" or "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main". (☞ p. 230, 239)

∗9 This can be set if the input signal does not contain an Auro-3D signal or if the input Auro-3D signal does not contain Front Height channels.

∗10 This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" is set to "On". (☞ p. 188)

∗11 This item cannot be set when "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None". (☞ p. 230)

∗12 This item cannot be set when Audyssey® Setup (Speaker Calibration) has not been performed.

∗13 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.

∗14 This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off". (☞ p. 187)

∗15 This item cannot be set when sound mode is "DTS Virtual:X" or sound mode that have "+Virtual:X" in the sound mode name.

∗16 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.

∗17 This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.

Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

● This indicates the default sound mode.
○ This indicates the selectable sound mode.

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal												
		Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	Analog / PCM	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Auro-3D	PCM multi-channel	DSD (Super Audio CD)
Direct																		
Direct		○	○	○*2		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DSD Direct					○													○
Pure Direct																		
Pure Direct		○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DSD Pure Direct					○													○
Stereo																		
Stereo		○	○	●	●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Surround																		
Dolby Atmos	*1					●												
Dolby TrueHD						○*3	○									○*4		
Dolby Digital +						○*5		○										
Dolby Digital									○									
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Dolby Surround						●	●	●								○*4		
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Neural:X						○	○	○								○*4		
Dolby Surround		●	○	○	○													

*1 – *5 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" ()

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal												
		Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	Analog / PCM	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Auro-3D	PCM multi-channel	DSD (Super Audio CD)
DTS Surround																		
DTS:X MSTR / DTS:X										●								
DTS-HD MSTR											○*12					○*13		
DTS-HD HI RES											○*14							
DTS Express												○						
DTS ES Dscrt 6.1	*7												○					
DTS ES Mtrx 6.1	*7													○				
DTS 96/24																○*15		
DTS Surround													○	○	○			
DTS (-HD) + Dolby Surround											○	○	○	○	○	○*13		
DTS (-HD) + Neural:X	*8										●	●	●	●	●	○*13		
DTS (-HD) / DTS:X + Virtual:X	*9									○	○	○	○	○	○	○*13		
DTS Neural:X	*8	○	●	○	○													
DTS Virtual:X	*10		○	○	○													
Auro-3D																		
Auro-3D	*11	○	○	○	○		○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Auro-2D Surround	*11	○	○	○	○		○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Multi Ch In																		
Multi Ch In																○*16	●	●
Multi Ch In 7.1	*7																○*17	
Multi In + Dolby Surround																	○	○
Multi In + Neural:X																	○	○
Multi In + Virtual:X																	○	○
Original sound mode																		
Multi Ch Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Virtual		○	○	○	○	○*6	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

*6 - *17 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ <u>p. 317</u>)

∗1 This item can be selected when using any of the Surround Back, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Top Rear, Rear Height, Front Dolby, Surround Dolby or Back Dolby speaker.

∗2 The default sound mode for the AirPlay playback is "Direct".

∗3 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD signal.

∗4 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Dolby TrueHD.

∗5 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby Digital Plus signal.

∗6 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus signal.

∗7 This item can be selected when surround back speakers are used.

∗8 This item cannot be selected when a DTS(-HD) format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.

∗9 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.

∗10 This item cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.

∗11 This item cannot be selected if the sampling frequency of the input signal is 32 kHz.

∗12 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Master Audio.

∗13 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains DTS-HD Master Audio.

∗14 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Hi Resolution.

∗15 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS 96/24.

∗16 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Multi Channel PCM.

∗17 This item can be selected when the input signals contain surround back signals.

Explanation of terms

■ Audyssey

Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment)

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT32 calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

■ Auro-3D

Auro-3D®

The Auro-3D® technology suite is a groundbreaking new audio technology that combines height-based listening formats with powerful creative tools to deliver an unrivaled three-dimensional sound experience. Auro-3D® is the general format name for Sound in 3D and its related speaker lay-outs.

Auro-Matic®

Auro-Matic® up-mixing technology software is a unique creative tool that transforms legacy Mono, Stereo and Surround content into a natural 3D or 2D listening experience.

■ Dolby

Dolby Atmos

Introduced first in the cinema, Dolby Atmos brings a revolutionary sense of dimension and immersion to the Home Theater experience. Dolby Atmos is an adaptable and scalable object based format that reproduces audio as independent sounds (or objects) that can be accurately positioned and move dynamically throughout the 3 dimensional listening space during playback. A key ingredient of Dolby Atmos is the introduction of a height plane of sound above the listener.

Dolby Atmos Stream

Dolby Atmos content will be delivered to your Dolby Atmos Enabled AV pre tuner via Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD on Blu-ray Disc, downloadable files and streaming media. A Dolby Atmos stream contains special metadata that describes the positioning of sounds within the room. This object audio data is decoded by a Dolby Atmos AV pre tuner and scaled for optimum playback through Home Theater speaker systems of every size and configuration.

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1-channels are played: 3 front channels ("FL", "FR" and "C"), 2 surround channels ("SL" and "SR") and the "LFE" channel for low frequency effects.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a "three-dimensional" feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved. This delivers a thrilling surround sound experience in the home.

Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

Dolby Surround

Dolby Surround is a next generation surround technology that intelligently up mixes stereo; 5.1 and 7.1 content for playback through your surround speaker system. Dolby Surround is compatible with traditional speaker layouts, as well as Dolby Atmos enabled playback systems that employ in-ceiling speakers or products with Dolby speaker technology.

Dolby Speaker Technology (Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers)

A convenient alternative to speakers built into the ceiling, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers employ the ceiling above you as a reflective surface for reproducing audio in the height plane above the listener. These speakers feature a unique upward firing driver and special signal processing. These features can be built into a conventional speaker or standalone speaker module. The features minimally impact the overall speaker footprint while providing an immersive listening experience during Dolby Atmos and Dolby Surround playback.

Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution.

■ DTS

Dialog Control

Gives you control of the listening experience. You can lift the dialog out from the background sounds when clarity and intelligibility are desired. This requires that content has been authored to support Dialog Control.

DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. DTS delivers a powerful and dynamic surround sound experience, and is found in the world's finest movie theaters and screening rooms.

DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1-channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

DTS Digital Surround

DTS™ Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1-channels of digital discrete surround sound.

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel audio format that inserts a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS Express

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1-channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

DTS-HD

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc.
This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS:X

DTS:X produces a hemisphere of audio, where flyovers as well as ambient backgrounds become truly enveloping. DTS:X objects enable audio to move smoothly from one speaker to any other creating life-like realism.

DTS Neural:X

Enables an immersive audio experience for older content. DTS Neural:X can upmix your stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 content to take full advantage of all speakers in your surround sound system.

DTS Virtual:X

DTS Virtual:X allows you to enjoy multi-dimensional sound regardless of room size, layout, or speaker configuration.

■ Audio

Apple Lossless Audio Codec

This is a codec for lossless audio compression method developed by Apple Inc. This codec can be played back on iTunes, iPod or iPhone. Data compressed to approximately 60 – 70 % can be decompressed to exactly the same original data.

Bass Sync

Audio sources such as BD and DVD inherently have time delay between the bass components of the satellite channel and the LFE channel. This function adjusts such a delay for reproducing (replaying) richer bass sound during playback. This function is by default set to 0 msec. Since the delay varies according to the title, play back the audio source and adjust to the most effective value for playback. For some audio sources that are played back, this function may have little effect.

FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality.
The FLAC license is as shown below.
Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Josh Coalson
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

LFE

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass to the system subwoofer(s).

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.

MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include "MPEG-1 Video", "MPEG-2 Video", "MPEG-4 Visual", "MPEG-4 AVC". Audio standards include "MPEG-1 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio", "MPEG-4 AAC".

WMA (Windows Media Audio)

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

Sampling frequency

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the "sampling frequency". The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

Speaker impedance

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in Ω (ohms).

Greater power can be obtained when this value is smaller.

Dialogue normalization function

This function operates automatically during playback of Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS or DTS-HD sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.

Dynamic range

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

Downmix

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to a lower number of channels and plays back according to the system's configuration.

■ Video

ISF

ISF (Imaging Science Foundation) is an organization that certifies video technicians who are then qualified to carry out calibration and adjustment to match the installation conditions. It also sets quality standards for the optimization of device video performance.

Progressive (sequential scanning)

This is a scanning system of the video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and jagged edges.

■ Network

AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

WEP Key (network key)

This is key information used for encrypting data when conducting data transfer. On this unit, the same WEP key is used for data encryption and decryption, so the same WEP key must be set on both devices in order for communications to be established between them.

Wi-Fi®

Wi-Fi Certification assures tested and proven interoperability by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group certifying interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)

This is a security standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance. In addition to the conventional SSID (network name) and WEP key (network key), it also uses a user identification function and encrypting protocol for stronger security.

WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2)

This is a new version of the WPA established by the Wi-Fi Alliance, compatible with more secure AES encryption.

WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK (Pre-shared Key)

This is a simple authentication system for mutual authentication when a preset character string matches on the wireless LAN access point and client.

Network Names (SSID: Service Set Identifier)

When forming wireless LAN networks, groups are formed to prevent interference, data theft, etc. These groups are based on "SSID (network names)". For enhanced security, a WEP key is set so that communication is unavailable unless both the "SSID" and the WEP key match. This is suitable for constructing a simplified network.

■ Others

HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

MAIN ZONE

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

Pairing

Pairing (registration) is an operation that is required in order to connect a Bluetooth device to this unit using Bluetooth. When paired, the devices authenticate each other and can connect without mistaken connections occurring.
When using Bluetooth connection for the first time, you need to pair this unit and the Bluetooth device to be connected.

Protection circuit

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or over temperature for any reason.

Trademark information

Made for

iPod iPhone iPad

AirPlay

"Made for iPod," "Made for iPhone," and "Made for iPad" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, iPhone, or iPad, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.

Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone, or iPad may affect wireless performance.

AirPlay, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, and Retina are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPad Pro, iPad Air, iPad mini, and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc.

- Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.

AUDYSSEY
MULTEQ XT32
DYNAMIC VOLUME

AUDYSSEY
LFC

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.

AURO3D® AUDIO

Manufactured under license from Auro Technologies.

Auro-3D® and the related symbols are registered trademarks of Auro Technologies. All materials contained in this work are protected by copyright law and may not be reproduced, distributed, transmitted, displayed, published or broadcast without the prior written permission of Auro Technologies NV or in case of third party materials, the owner of that content. You may not alter or remove any trademark, copyright or other notice from copies of the content.

Auro Technologies: mail info@auro-technologies.com, phone +32-(0)-14314343, fax +32-(0)-14321224, www.auro-technologies.com

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

DOLBY ATMOS

COMPATIBLE DOLBY VISION

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Surround, Dolby Vision, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

DTS:X **DTS VIRTUAL:X**

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, DTS:X, the DTS:X logo, Virtual:X, and the DTS Virtual:X logo are registered trademarks and/or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

HDMI
HIGH DEFINITION MULTIMEDIA INTERFACE

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

Wi-Fi CERTIFIED

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

Specifications

■ Audio section

- **Analog**

Input sensitivity:	Unbalanced RCA input : 200 mV
	Balanced XLR input : 400 mV
Frequency response:	10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (Direct mode)
S/N:	105 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)
Distortion:	0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (Direct mode)
Rated output:	Unbalanced RCA pre-output: 1.2 V
	Balanced XLR pre-output: 2.4 V

- **Digital**

D/A output:	Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback)
	Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB)
	S/N ratio — 102 dB
	Dynamic range — 100 dB
Digital input:	Format — Digital audio interface

- **Phono equalizer**

Input sensitivity:	2.5 mV
RIAA deviation:	±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
S/N:	74 dB (IHF-A weighted, with 5 mV input)
Distortion factor:	0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)

■ Video section

- **Standard video connectors**

  Input/output level and impedance: 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms

  Frequency response: 5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, –3 dB

- **Color component video connector**

  Input/output level and impedance: Y signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms
  P_B / C_B signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms
  P_R / C_R signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms

  Frequency response: 5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, –3 dB

■ Tuner section

[FM]

[AM]

(Note: µV at 75 Ω/ohms, 0 dBf = 1 x 10^{-15} W)

	[FM]	[AM]
Reception frequency range:	87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz	520 kHz – 1710 kHz
Effective sensitivity:	1.2 µV (12.8 dBf)	18 µV
50 dB sensitivity:	MONO — 2.8 µV (20.2 dBf)	
S/N ratio:	MONO — 70 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode) STEREO — 67 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)	
Distortion:	MONO — 0.7 % (1 kHz) STEREO — 1.0 % (1 kHz)	

■ Wireless LAN section

Network type (wireless LAN standard):	Conforming to IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (Wi-Fi® compliant) *1
Security:	WEP 64 bit, WEP 128 bit
	WPA/WPA2-PSK (AES)
	WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP)
Used frequency range:	2.4 GHz, 5 GHz

*1 The Wi-Fi® CERTIFIED Logo and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED On-Product Logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

■ Bluetooth section

Communications system:	Bluetooth Specification Version 3.0 + EDR (Enhanced Data Rate)
Transmission power:	Bluetooth Specification Power Class 1
Maximum communication range:	Approx. 98.4 ft/30 m in line of sight *2
Used frequency range:	2.4 GHz
Modulation scheme:	FHSS (Frequency-Hopping Spread Spectrum)
Supported profiles:	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2
	AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) 1.5
Corresponding codec:	SBC
Transmission range (A2DP):	20 Hz – 20,000 Hz

*2 The actual communication range varies depending on the influence of such factors as obstructions between devices, electromagnetic waves from microwave ovens, static electricity, cordless phones, reception sensitivity, antenna performance, operating system, application software etc.

■ General

Power supply:	AC 120 V, 60 Hz
Power consumption:	90 W
Power consumption in standby mode:	0.2 W *
Power consumption in CEC standby mode:	0.5 W

* When "Network Control" in the menu is set to "Off In Standby" and "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "Off".

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.

■ Dimensions (Unit : in. (mm))
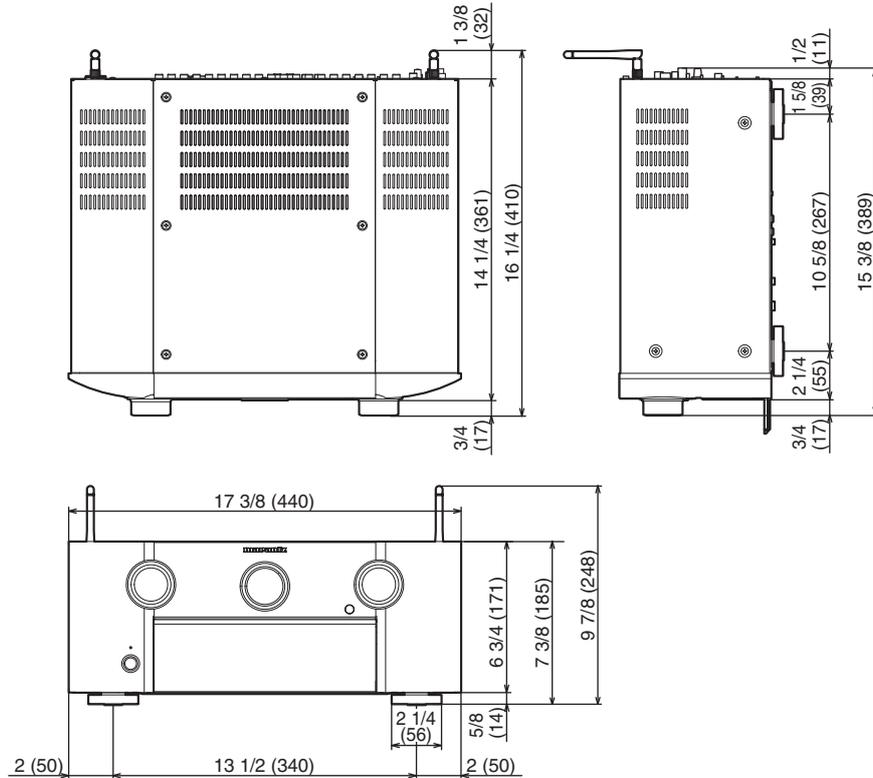
■ Weight: 30 lbs 3 oz (13.7 kg)

Index

☞ **W**

☞ **Z**

License

■ License information for the software used in the unit

About GPL (GNU-General Public License), LGPL (GNU Lesser General Public License) License

This product uses GPL/LGPL software and software made by other companies.

After you purchase this product, you may procure, modify or distribute the source code of the GPL/LGPL software that is used in the product.

Marantz provides the source code based on the GPL and LPGL licenses at the actual cost upon your request to our customer service center. However, note that we make no guarantees concerning the source code. Please also understand that we do not offer support for the contents of the source code.

This section describes software license used for this unit. To maintain the correct content, the original (English) is used.

❏ GPL

Open Source Used	Version
bridge-utils	2.8
busybox	1.21.1
ebtables	2.0.10-4
Linux kernel	3.10.74
mtd-utils	1.4.3
ntfs-3g_ntfsprogs	2011.4.12
ntpclient	2007
u-boot	2015.01
wireless-tools	version 29

❏ LGPL

Open Source Used	Version
ffmpeg	0.8.3
glibc	2.9
libmms	0.6.2

❏ curl-7.24.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2014, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

❏ e2fsprogs-libs-1.40.8/lib/uuid

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, and the entire permission notice in its entirety, including the disclaimer of warranties.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ALL OF WHICH ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❏ expat-2.0.1

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper
Copyright (c) 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006 Expat maintainers.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:
The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT.
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

❏ getopt

http://cvsweb.netbsd.org/bsdweb.cgi/src/lib/libc/stdlib/
Copyright (c) 1987, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❏ jQuery

Copyright 2014 jQuery Foundation and other contributors
http://jquery.com/

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

❏ libpcap-1.4.0

License: BSD

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The names of the authors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

❑ libtar-1.2.11

Copyright (c) 1998-2003 University of Illinois Board of Trustees
Copyright (c) 1998-2003 Mark D. Roth
All rights reserved.
Developed by: Campus Information Technologies and Educational Services, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign
Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal with the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimers.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimers in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the names of Campus Information Technologies and Educational Services, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this Software without specific prior written permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT.
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE CONTRIBUTORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS WITH THE SOFTWARE.

❑ mDNS 320.10.80

The majority of the source code in the mDNSResponder project is licensed under the terms of the Apache License, Version 2.0, available from:
<http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>
To accommodate license compatibility with the widest possible range of client code licenses, the shared library code, which is linked at runtime into the same address space as the client using it, is licensed under the terms of the "Three-Clause BSD License".
The Linux Name Service Switch code, contributed by National ICT Australia Ltd (NICTA) is licensed under the terms of the NICTA Public Software Licence (which is substantially similar to the "Three-Clause BSD License", with some additional language pertaining to Australian law).

❏ mongoose

https://github.com/cesanta/mongoose/

Copyright (c) 2004-2013 Sergey Lyubka

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

❏ openssl-1.0.0d

Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
   "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)"
4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:
   "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

❏ **portmap-6.0**

Copyright (c) 1990 The Regents of the University of California.

- All rights reserved.
- Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. A ll advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:
This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

- THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❏ pstdint.h-0.1.12

- BSD License:
- Copyright (c) 2005-2011 Paul Hsieh
- All rights reserved.
- Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

- THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED.
- IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❏ rl78flash 2000.3.1

License

=======

The MIT License (MIT)
Copyright (c) 2012 Maxim Salov

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

❏ sqlite 2003.5.7

SQLite Copyright
SQLite is in the
Public Domain

All of the code and documentation in SQLite has been dedicated to the public domain by the authors. All code authors, and representatives of the companies they work for, have signed affidavits dedicating their contributions to the public domain and originals of those signed affidavits are stored in a firesafe at the main offices of Hwaci. Anyone is free to copy, modify, publish, use, compile, sell, or distribute the original SQLite code, either in source code form or as a compiled binary, for any purpose, commercial or non-commercial, and by any means.

The previous paragraph applies to the deliverable code and documentation in SQLite - those parts of the SQLite library that you actually bundle and ship with a larger application. Some scripts used as part of the build process (for example the "configure" scripts generated by autoconf) might fall under other open-source licenses. Nothing from these build scripts ever reaches the final deliverable SQLite library, however, and so the licenses associated with those scripts should not be a factor in assessing your rights to copy and use the SQLite library.

All of the deliverable code in SQLite has been written from scratch. No code has been taken from other projects or from the open internet. Every line of code can be traced back to its original author, and all of those authors have public domain dedications on file. So the SQLite code base is clean and is uncontaminated with licensed code from other projects.

❏ strlcpy.c , v1.11

- Copyright (c) 1998 Todd C. Miller <Todd.Miller@courtesan.com>

- Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

- THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

❏ taglib-1.5

copyright : (C) 2002 - 2008 by Scott Wheeler
email : wheeler@kde.org

"The contents of this file are subject to the Mozilla Public License Version 1.1 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/

Software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" basis, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing rights and limitations under the License.

❏ tinyxml 2002.4.3

www.sourceforge.net/projects/tinyxml

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

❏ Tremor

http://wiki.xiph.org/index.php/Tremor

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

❏ zlib

http://www.zlib.net/

zlib.h -- interface of the 'zlib' general purpose compression library
version 1.2.3, July 18th, 2005

Copyright (C) 1995-2004 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly jloup@gzip.org, Mark Adler madler@alumni.caltech.edu

❏ The Spotify software is subject to third party licenses found here:

www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses

www.marantz.com

You can find your nearest authorized distributor or dealer on our website.

marantz ® is a registered trademark.

marantz®

AV Pre Tuner
AV8805

Quick Start Guide

Guide de démarrage rapide /
Guía de inicio rápido

Read Me First....

Lisez-moi en premier.... /
Lea esto primero....

**Please do not return this unit to the store.
If you need help…**

**Check our AVR setup tips online
Us.Marantz.com/SetupTips
Ca.Marantz.com/SetupTips**

**Call for Assistance
1-855-ONE-Marantz (USA)
1-855-663-6272
1-800-668-0652 (Canada)**

Monday – Friday 10:00AM to 10:00PM E.S.T
Saturday 12:00PM to 8:00PM E.S.T

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Marantz Pre Tuner.
This guide provides step-by-step instructions for setting up your Pre Tuner.

Before You Begin

Required for Setup

TV	RCA cables or XLR cables	Speakers / Speaker cables
HDMI cable	Power amplifier	
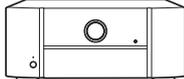
Optional

LAN cable or	Wi-Fi router

- When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with the Deep Color, 4K and ARC functions, use a "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" that displays the HDMI logo.
- These drawings are for illustrative purposes only and may not represent the actual product(s).

What's In the Box

Quick Start Guide		FM indoor antenna	
Safety Instructions		AM loop antenna	
Notes on radio		Sound calibration microphone	
Warranty (for USA / for CANADA)		Sound calibration microphone stand	
Cable labels		Remote control unit (RC039SR)	
Pre Tuner		R03/AAA batteries	
Power cord		External antennas for Bluetooth/ wireless connectivity	
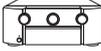
- The included sound calibration microphone stand is convenient for use when performing Speaker Calibration. Using your own tripod or the supplied Sound calibration microphone stand enables settings to be automatically configured to the optimum listening environment, providing exceptionally high performance.

Important: External Antennas

The removable external antennas are required for both Bluetooth and Wireless network connectivity. Please make sure to connect the antennas before attempting to use the Bluetooth or Wi-Fi features of the AV8805.

❏ Connecting the external antennas for Bluetooth/Wireless connectivity

For each of the two antennas:
① Place the antenna evenly over the antenna terminal located at the upper left or right corner of the rear panel.
② Turn the antenna clockwise until it is fully connected. Do not over tighten.
③ Rotate the antenna upwards for the best possible reception.
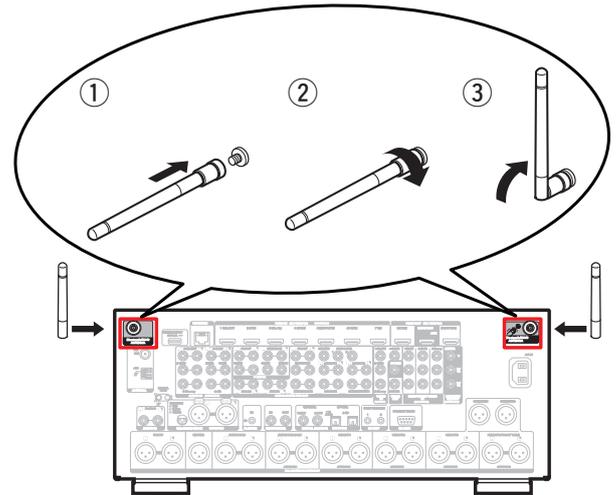
Setup

There are four steps to the setup process.

<div style="border: 1px solid; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">

1 Installing batteries in the remote control unit

2 Connecting the Pre Tuner, Power Amplifier and your TV

3 Following the On-Screen Setup Assistant

4 Downloading the Mobile Apps

</div>

1 Installing batteries in the remote control unit

Batteries
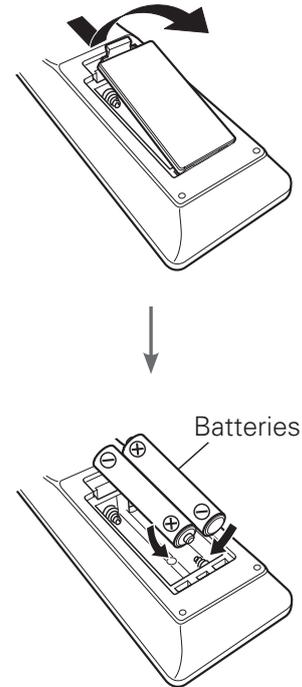
2 Connecting the Pre Tuner, Power Amplifier and your TV

1) Place the Pre Tuner and Power Amplifier near your TV and connect the power cord

TV

Pre Tuner

Power Amplifier

TV

Pre Tuner

Power cord
(supplied)

Connect to household
power outlet
(AC 120 V, 60 Hz)
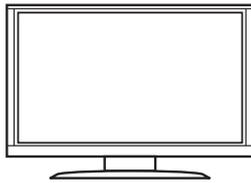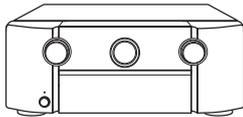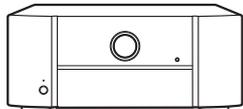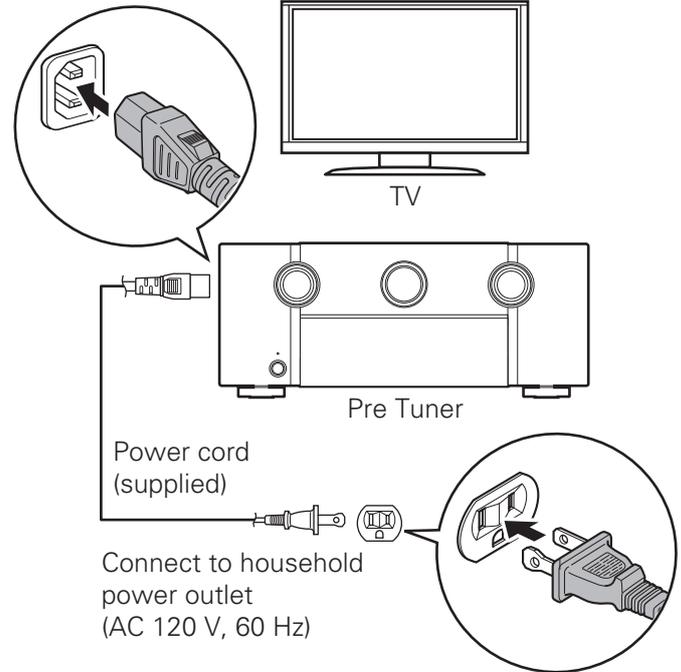
2) Connect the Pre Tuner to your home network

Wired LAN

Connect an Ethernet cable (not included) between your Pre Tuner and your network router.

To LAN port

Router
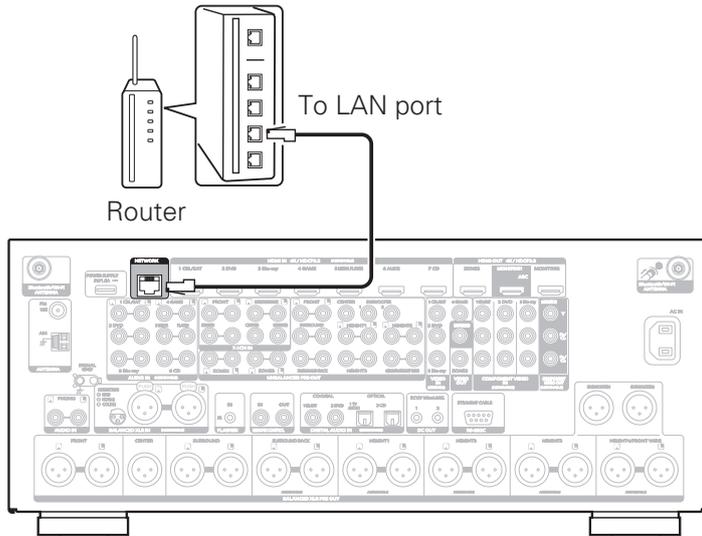
Wireless LAN

When connecting to wireless LAN (Wi-Fi), follow the instructions in "Connecting the external antennas for Bluetooth/Wireless connectivity" and connect the antennas.
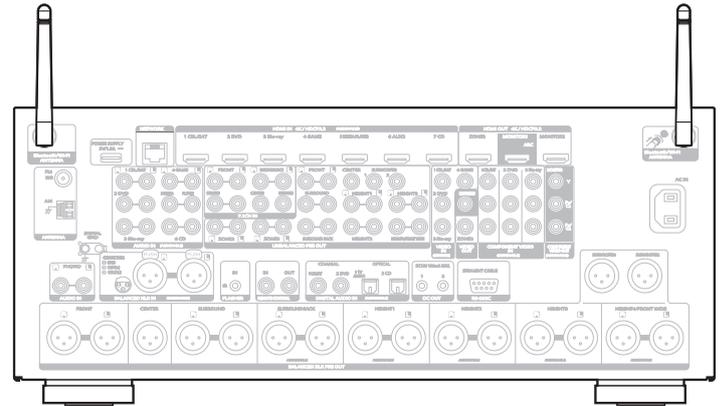
3) Connect the Pre Tuner to your TV with an HDMI cable

HDMI IN
(ARC)

HDMI cable

MONITOR1   ARC

HDMI OUT
MONITOR1
(ARC)

Pre Tuner (Rear panel)
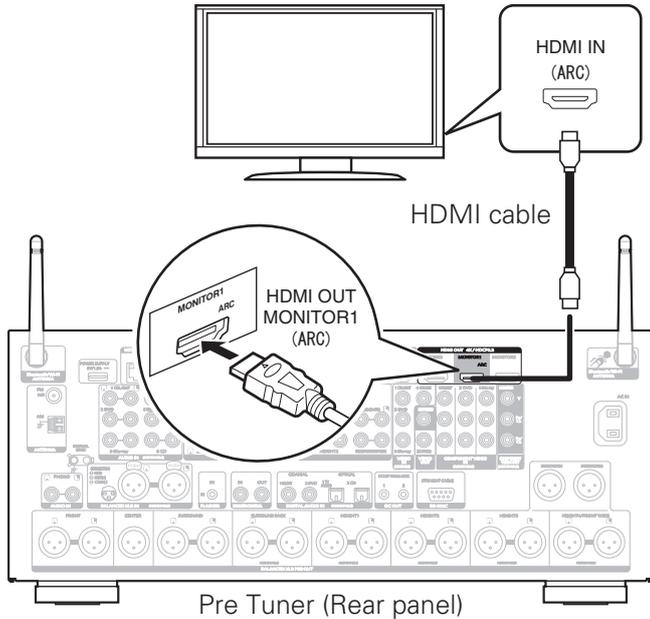
ARC (Audio Return Channel) :
If your TV supports ARC, your TV can send audio back to the Pre Tuner when you are using your TV's built-in video sources (TV tuner, Smart TV streaming services, etc…) ARC requires that you enable HDMI CEC on your TV. Please refer to your TV's Owner's Manual for instructions on how to setup HDMI CEC. Note that some TV manufacturers use other names for the HDMI CEC function.

4) Turn on the TV
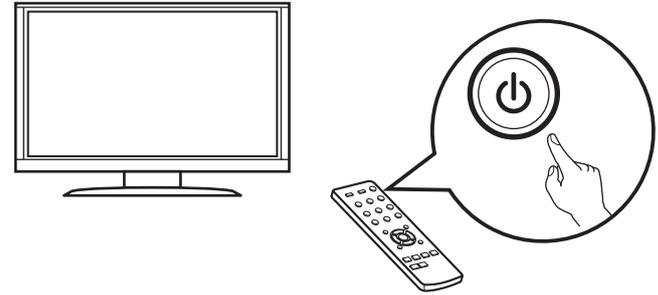
TV remote control unit

5) Select the appropriate HDMI input on your TV

HDMI

INPUT or TV/VIDEO
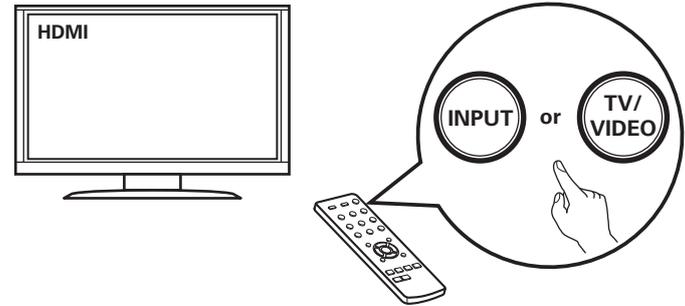
TV remote control unit

6) Turn on the Pre Tuner

• Press ⏻ to turn on the Pre Tuner.
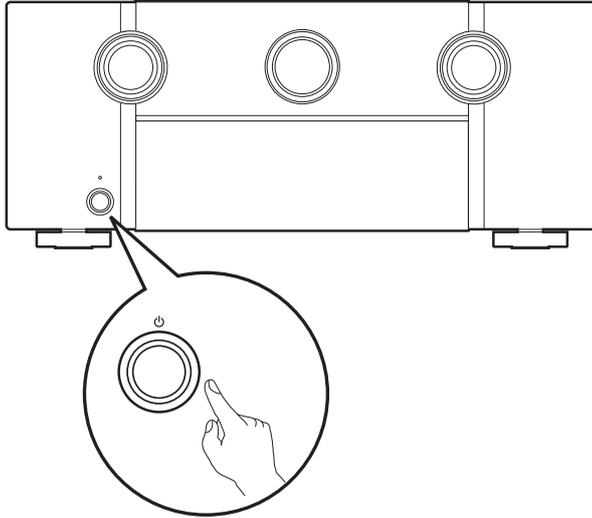
7) Verify the connection

• Verify that you can see this screen on your TV.

If this screen is not displayed, please go back and retry the steps again in the recommended sequence.

3 Following the On-Screen Setup Assistant

The Setup Assistant will walk you through connecting and configuring your Power Amplifier and components to your Marantz Pre Tuner. Please use the remote control and follow the on-screen instructions.
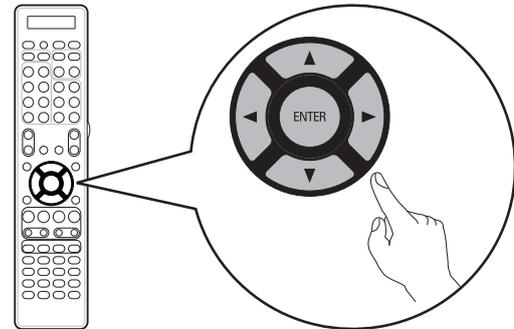
4 Downloading the Mobile Apps

Download both the "HEOS" App and the "Marantz 2016 AVR Remote" App for the full home entertainment experience. The HEOS App is required to access online music through your Pre Tuner.

HEOS

The HEOS App allows you to explore, browse, and play music from many online streaming services or from your own music library.

Marantz 2016 AVR Remote

Control your new Pre Tuner with the latest Marantz 2016 AVR Remote App. Volume control, sound mode selection and advanced settings are always only a tap away.

Owner's Manual

- For more information, visit www.marantz.com
- Refer to the Online Manual for other functions information and operation procedure details. manuals.marantz.com/AV8805/NA/EN/

Online Manual
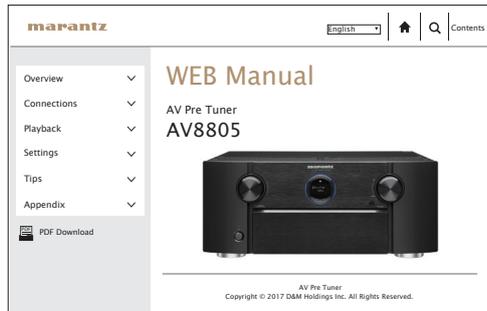
www.marantz.com

You can find your nearest authorized distributor or dealer on our website.

marantz ® is a registered trademark.

Remote Control Preset Codes (AV8805)

AVP

M	Marantz	0000

CBL/SAT group

Set Top Box

A	Access Communications	4081
	Adams Cable TV	4081
	Alabama Broadband	4081
	Alphastar	4027
	Alta Utilities	4075
	Americable International	4075
	Amstrad	4076, 4046, 4047, 4050
	Anne Arundel Broadband	4081
	Apple TV	4068
	Arledge Electronics	4074, 4081
	Armstrong	4081
	Astound Broadband	4075, 4081
	ATMC	4081
	Atsky	4048
B	Ballard Rural Telephone Cooperative	4074
	Bee Line Cable	4081
	Bell	4074
	Bell Satellite TV	4074

	Bend Broadband	4081
	Blue Ridge Communications	4075
	Boycom Cablevision	4081
	Bright House	4075, 4081
	Bristol Tennessee Essential Services	4075
	BSkyB	4076, 4021, 4045, 4046
	Buckeye Cable System	4081
C	Cable America	4075
	Cable Axion Digitel	4081
	Cable Cable	4075
	Cablecom	4080
	Cable & Communications	4081
	Cable One	4081
	Cable Suite	4081
	Cable TV of Camrose	4081
	Cablevision du Nord	4081
	Cablevision of Marion County	4081
	Cable Vision Services	4075

	Cablevision	4075, 4081
	Canal+	4082
	CanalSat	4082
	CAS Cable	4081
	CCAP	4075
	Chaparral	4039
	Chambers Cable	4081
	Charter	4075, 4081
	Chester Telephone	4081
	Cincinnati Bell	4075, 4081
	Citizens Cable TV	4081
	Cisco	4075, 4080
	Coast Cable Communications	4081
	Coast Communications	4081
	Cogeco	4081
	Columbus Telephone	4081
	Comcast	4075, 4081
	Community Cable & Broadband	4081
	Comporium	4075

Consolidated Communications	4081	
Coop CSCF	4081	
Coosa Cable	4081	
Country Cablevision	4081	
Country Cablevision Ltd.	4081	
Cox	4075, 4081	
CRRS-TV	4081	
D	Delta Cable	4081
	Direct Tv	4001, 4016, 4044
	Dish Mexico	4074
	Dish Network	4030
	Dishpro	4074
	Drake	4026
	DRE	4051
E	East Arkansas Video	4081
	EastLink	4081
	Easton Cable	4075
	Echostar	4074, 4007, 4017, 4018, 4019, 4020, 4062, 4063, 4064
	Eurosky	4056, 4047
	Express Vu	4017
F	Fayetteville Electric System	4075
	FirstMile	4081
	Florida Cable	4081
	Foothills Rural Telephone Cooperative	4075
	Foxtel	4051
	Freesat	4056

	Fujitsu	4025
G	GCI	4081
	GE	4002, 4008, 4009
	General Instruments	4036, 4037
	General Satellite	4051
	Glenwood Telecommunications	4081
	Grande Communications	4075, 4081
	Gradiente	4044, 4057
H	Harlan Community TV	4081
	Harlan Municipal Utilities	4081
	Hitachi	4001, 4015
	HomeTel	4081
	Hood Canal Cablevision	4081
	Horizon Cable TV	4081
	HTS	4074
	Hughes Network	4001, 4016
	Humax	4078, 4079, 4049, 4050, 4051, 4052, 4053
	HunTel Systems	4081
I	ImOn Communications	4075
	Inside Connect Cable	4081
	Insight	4081
	Inter Mountain Cable	4075
J	Janeil	4025
	JVC	4074, 4017
K	Kabel Deutschland	4078
	KBS Cable TV	4081
	Knology	4075

L	LG Smart TV	4069
	Liberty Cablevision	4081
	Lincoln Cable Television	4081
	Loretel Systems	4081
M	Madison Communications	4081
	Marantz	4000
	Markdale Cable TV	4081
	MCV Broadband	4075
	Mediacom	4081
	Mediapolis Telephone	4081
	Mediastream	4081
	MetroCast Cablevision	4081
	MetroNet	4075
	Midcontinent Communications	4081
	Mid-Rivers Communications	4081
	Minet	4075
	Mitsubishi	4001
	Mosaic Telecom	4081
	Morristown Utility Systems	4075
	Motorola	4081
	MTC Technologies	4081
	Muscatine Power & Water	4081
N	Netgear Neo TV	4072
	Nextgen Communications	4075, 4081
	Nokia	4058, 4059, 4060, 4061

Northland Communications	4081	
Northwest Iowa Telephone	4075	
Northwest Telephone Cooperative	4081	
NorthwesTel	4081	
Novus	4081	
NuLink	4075	
NTL	4077	
O Optima	4048	
Optus	4077	
Orbitel Communications	4081	
P Pace	4075, 4077, 4076, 4079, 4080, 4081, 4082	
Panasonic	4004, 4010	
Panhandle Telephone	4081	
Philips	4080, 4031, 4035, 4044, 4057	
Pine Bluff Cable	4081	
Pioneer	4075	
Proscan	4002, 4008, 4009, 4011	
PTCI	4081	
R Radio Shack	4036, 4037	
Rancho Murieta Association	4081	
RCA	4002, 4008, 4009, 4029	
RCN	4081	
Realistic	4040	
Reservation Telephone	4081	
Resort Cable	4081	

Rogers	4075, 4081	
Roku XDS	4073	
Rural Cable	4036	
Rural Telephone Company	4081	
S Samsung	4075, 4076, 4077, 4022, 4027, 4042, 4043, 4054, 4055, 4050	
Schneider	4041, 4043	
Scientific Atlanta	4075	
Service Electric	4081	
Shaw	4081	
Shentel	4081	
Sjoberg's Cable TV	4081	
SKY	4076, 4079, 4044, 4045, 4057	
Sky Deutschland	4079	
Skyplus	4048	
Skysat	4041, 4047, 4056	
Source Cable	4081	
Sony	4003, 4012, 4014, 4065, 4066, 4067, 4014, 4070	
Sun Country Cable	4081	
Star Choice	4032	
Star Trak	4024	
STS	4038	
Suddenlink	4075, 4081	
SuperDish	4028	
T TDS Telecom	4074	
Teac	4049	
Teledistribution Amos	4081	
Telus	4074	

Texas Mid-Gulf Cablevision	4081	
Thomson	4076, 4080, 4046, 4056	
Time Warner	4075, 4081	
Toshiba	4001, 4034	
Total Cable Service	4081	
Triangle Communication System	4074	
Tricolor TV	4051	
Tri-County Cable TV	4081	
Troy Cablevision	4081	
TV Cable Company of Andalusia	4081	
U Universum	4056	
Uniden	4005, 4006, 4013	
United Communications Association	4081	
Utilities Board City of Foley	4081	
UPC	4077, 4080	
UPC Cablecom	4080	
V Valparaiso Communications	4081	
Videotron	4075	
Video Pall	4025	
Vision Communications	4081	
Virgin Media	4077	
Volcano Vision	4081	
VTR	4081	
W Wadsworth Cable TV	4081	
Waitsfield Cable	4081	

	Wave Broadband	4081
	Westman Communications	4081
	Western Digital WD TV	4071
	Western Iowa Telephone	4075
	White County Video	4081
	WideOpenWest	4081
	Willamette Broadband	4081
	Windom Communications	4075
	WOW!	4075, 4081
X	Xfinity	4075, 4081
Z	Zenith	4033, 4025, 4023

TV group

TV

A

Acer	1141
Admiral	1009, 1089, 1002
Aiko	1059
Aiwa	1117, 1118
Akai	1161, 1164, 1172, 1001
Amtron	1023
Anam	1113
Anam National	1023, 1069, 1092
AOC	1003, 1049, 1024, 1127
Aristona	1172
Audiovox	1023

B

Baird	1161
Barco	1172
Basic Line	1172
Bell & Howell	1009, 1025
Benq	1104, 1142
Berthen	1172
Blue Sky	1172
BPL	1161
Broksonic	1097, 1098, 1113, 1003
Bush	1161, 1172

C

Celebrity	1001
Citizen	1003, 1023, 1059, 1063, 1026, 1013
Colortyme	1003, 1043
Contec/Cony	1045, 1047, 1023, 1113
Craig	1023, 1113, 1020, 1022

Crown	1161, 1023, 1067
Curtis Mathes	1003, 1110, 1025, 1062, 1026, 1103, 1013

D

Daewoo	1003, 1059, 1024, 1084, 1101, 1013, 1035, 1036, 1172
Dansai	1161
Daytron	1003, 1013, 1016
De Graaf	1161
Dimensia	1110, 1103
Direct TV	1152
Dumont	1010, 1003, 1153
D-Vision	1172

E

Elbe	1172
Electroband	1001
Electrohome	1003, 1133, 1001, 1069
Emerson	1003, 1020, 1044, 1038, 1045, 1048, 1055, 1023, 1025, 1061, 1022, 1094, 1096, 1099, 1013, 1113, 1101, 1015, 1021
Envision	1003
ESA	1164

F

Finlandia	1161
Finlux	1172
Fisher	1161, 1051, 1025, 1091, 1160
Firstline	1161, 1172
Freesat	1165
Fujitsu	1038, 1155, 1124, 1125
Funai	1038, 1023, 1113

G

Gateway	1150
GE	1110, 1003, 1085, 1046, 1054, 1133, 1018, 1069, 1022, 1103, 1113, 1136, 1153
Goldstar	1045, 1024, 1112, 1080, 1100, 1013, 1003, 1030, 1154
Goodmans	1172
Granada	1161
Grandin	1172
Grundig	1172

H

Hallmark	1003
Hanseatic	1172
Hisense	1172, 1161, 1116
Hitachi	1041, 1003, 1045, 1047, 1032, 1065, 1068, 1088, 1082, 1037, 1094, 1031, 1159, 1145, 1139, 1012, 1140
Hypson	1172

I

Infinity	1067
Internal	1172
ITT	1161
ITT Nokia	1161

J

Janeil	1134
JBL	1067
JC Penney	1003, 1046, 1047, 1054, 1133, 1110, 1019, 1112, 1024, 1063, 1018, 1026, 1083, 1085, 1100, 1103, 1013, 1154
Jensen	1003

	JMB	1172	Orion	1172, 1020, 1096	Realistic	1025, 1103

Column 1

	JMB	1172
	Jubilee	1172
	JVC	1045, 1047, 1050, 1060, 1065, 1028, 1029
K	Kathrein	1172
	Kawasho	1003, 1001
	Kenwood	1003
	Kloss Novabeam	1056, 1023, 1057, 1134
	Kneissel	1172
	KTV	1023, 1073, 1099, 1013, 1113, 1033, 1034
L	LG	1162, 1171, 1172, 1024, 1030
	Luxor	1161
M	M.Wards	1002, 1009, 1038
	Magnavox	1175, 1003, 1052, 1053, 1056, 1057, 1063, 1081, 1067, 1106
	Marantz	1000, 1172, 1003, 1122, 1067, 1031
	Matsui	1161, 1172
	Mitsubishi	1172, 1003, 1051, 1133, 1122, 1024, 1115
	Motorola	1069, 1014
	Myryad	1172
N	NEC	1029, 1003, 1043, 1024, 1069, 1012
	Neckermann	1172
	NET-TV	1137, 1150
	Neufunk	1172
	Nokia	1161
O	Oceanic	1161
	Onida	1029

Column 2

	Orion	1172, 1020, 1096
	Osaki	1172
	Otto Versand	1172
P	Pacific	1172
	Panasonic	1165, 1067, 1069, 1111, 1017, 1095
	Philips	1172, 1175, 1003, 1045, 1052, 1054, 1056, 1057, 1058, 1063, 1069, 1067, 1011
	Philips Magnavox	1106, 1067
	Pioneer	1003, 1018, 1070, 1071, 1037, 1094, 1145, 1147, 1149
	Plasmsync	1135
	Portland	1003, 1059, 1024, 1013
	Price Club	1026
	Prism	1018
	Proscan	1110, 1085, 1103, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008
	Pro Vision	1172
	Proton	1003, 1045
	Pye	1172
Q	Quasar	1069, 1073, 1111, 1010, 1153
R	Radiola	1172
	Radio Shack	1025, 1103, 1113, 1024
	Radio Shack/Realistic	1003, 1045, 1023, 1110, 1025, 1015, 1100, 1013
	RCA	1110, 1003, 1049, 1024, 1069, 1075, 1079, 1085, 1087, 1088, 1093, 1094, 1101, 1103, 1113, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008, 1153, 1014

Column 3

	Realistic	1025, 1103
	Runco	1010, 1153
S	Salora	1161
	Sampo	1150
	Samsung	1163, 1164, 1172, 1003, 1045, 1024, 1062, 1026, 1078, 1083, 1090, 1100, 1013, 1105, 1040, 1146, 1148, 1120, 1121, 1114, 1157
	Sansui	1119
	Sanyo	1161, 1166, 1003, 1051, 1025, 1072, 1077, 1091, 1156, 1157, 1158
	SBR	1172
	Schneider	1172
	Sharp	1177, 1029, 1173, 1003, 1045, 1055, 1015, 1064, 1066, 1076, 1089, 1013, 1014, 1123
	Siera	1172
	Signature	1009
	Sonitron	1161
	Sonolor	1161
	Sony	1174, 1001, 1102, 1108
	Soundesign	1003, 1038, 1023, 1063, 1113
	Starlite	1023
	Supersonic	1161
	Supre-Macy	1134
	Svasa	1161
	Sylvania	1003, 1042, 1052, 1053, 1063, 1056, 1057, 1067, 1089, 1151, 1039, 1089
	Symphonic	1044, 1023, 1039

T	Tandy	1014
	Tatung	1069
	Technics	1172, 1018
	TechniSat	1172
	Technosonic	1172
	Tecnimagen	1172
	Techwood	1003, 1018
	Tedelex	1161
	Teknika	1003, 1009, 1038, 1045, 1047, 1063, 1023, 1059, 1024, 1026, 1111, 1013, 1113
	Telecaption	1074
	Telestar	1172
	Tesla	1172
	Tevion	1172
	Toshiba	1176, 1167, 1168, 1042, 1025, 1074, 1026, 1098, 1003, 1107, 1019, 1027, 1111, 1135, 1136
	Totevision	1013
	TRANS-continents	1172
	Triad	1172
	Triumph	1172
	TVTEXT	1172
U	United	1172
	Universal	1046, 1054
V	Video Concepts	1113
	Viewsonic	1130, 1128, 1006, 1131, 1129, 1109, 1143, 1150, 1022, 1138, 1145
	VIZIO	1169, 1170

W	Wards	1003, 1009, 1044, 1038, 1046, 1052, 1054, 1056, 1110, 1057, 1024, 1015, 1067, 1086, 1103
	White Westinghouse	1101, 1001
	Wharfedale	1172
	Wilson	1172
	Windy Sam	1172
Y	Yamaha	1003, 1024
Z	Zenith	1171, 1010, 1003, 1009, 1144, 1153, 1032

BD/DVD group

DVD

3	3D LAB	2069
A	Aiwa	2036, 2037
	Alba	2069
	Aristona	2069
	Apex	2017, 2034, 2018, 2019, 2021, 2012
B	Bluray	2064
	Bose	2038, 2039, 2063
	Brandt	2004
C	California Audio Labs	2066
	CyberHome	2068
D	Dantax	2069
	Denon	2047, 2066, 2048
E	Elta	2068
	Finlux	2010
F	Funai	2049
G	GE	2020, 2029, 2033, 2009
	Go Video	2010
	GoldStar	2010
	GPX	2010
	Grundig	2069
H	Harman Kardon	2061
	Hanseatic	2010
	Hitachi	2031, 2012, 2008, 2031
I	Integra	2062
	Insignia	2010
J	JVC	2069, 2004, 2006, 2010, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043

K	Kenwood	2066, 2054, 2053
	Koss	2058
L	LG	2010
	Loewe	2069, 2010
	Lumatron	2010
	Lunatron	2010
	Luxman	2008
M	Magnavox	2069, 2004, 2023, 2025, 2011, 2007
	Marantz	2000, 2069, 2025, 2065
	Medion	2044, 2010
	Micromedia	2069, 2004
	Micromega	2069
	Mitsubishi	2011, 2015
	mp man	2068
N	NAD	2010
	NEC	2010
O	Omni	2068
	Onkyo	2062, 2004
	Oritron	2030, 2009
P	Panasonic	2066, 2004, 2003, 2015, 2016, 2055
	Philips	2069, 2004, 2007, 2011, 2058
	Pioneer	2002, 2014, 2056
	Polk Audio	2069
	Pye	2069
	Proscan	2020, 2032, 2009
R	Radionette	2010

	RCA	2020, 2005, 2009, 2035, 2057
	REC	2066
	Rotel	2040
S	Salora	2010
	Sampo	2041
	Samsung	2066, 2008, 2022, 2024, 2027, 2012
	Sanyo	2050, 2052
	Schneider	2069
	Sharp	2044, 2045
	Sherwood	2051, 2010
	Skantic	2069
	Silva Schneider	2010
	Sony	2067, 2001, 2013, 2059
	Sylvania	2044
T	Targa	2010
	TCM	2010
	Technics	2066
	Teac	2010
	Tchibo	2010
	Toshiba	2004, 2026, 2028, 2008
	Typhoon	2068
U	Universum	2010
W	Windy Sam	2008
Y	Yamaha	2066, 2069, 2046, 2060
Z	Zenith	2010

Blu-ray Disc

D	Denon	5034, 5042, 5035, 5036
H	Hitachi	5031, 5032, 5033
I	Integra	5013
J	JVC	5037, 5041, 5014, 5015, 5017, 5018, 5019, 5020
L	LG	5041, 5010, 5011
M	Marantz	5000, 5026, 5027
	Microsoft	5044
	Mitsubishi	5024, 5025
N	NEC	5041
O	Onkyo	5013
P	Panasonic	5041, 5001, 5002, 5003
	Philips	5038, 5040, 5004
	Pioneer	5005
R	RCA	5012
S	Samsung	5039, 5006, 5005
	Sharp	5028, 5029, 5030
	Sony	5007, 5008, 5009, 5016
T	Toshiba	5043, 5012
X	Xbox	5044
Y	Yamaha	5021, 5022, 5023

Audio group

CD

A	Advantage	3063
	AH!	3106
	Aiwa	3104, 3106, 3001, 3002, 3003
	Akai	3004, 3005, 3006
	Arcam	3106, 3107
	Atoll Electronique	3106
	Audio	3007
	Audio LABS	3008
	Audio Research	3106
	Audiolab	3106
	Audiomeca	3106
	Audioton	3106
	AVI	3106
C	Cairn	3106
	California	3008
	Cambridge	3106
	Carver	3106, 3009, 3010, 3011
	Casio	3012, 3020
	Copland	3109
	Curtis	3020, 3012
	Cyrus	3106
D	Denon	3013, 3108
	DKK	3097
	Dual	3108
	Dynaco	3106
E	Emerson	3014

F	Fisher	3011, 3015, 3016, 3017, 3018
G	Garrard	3109
	GE	3019
	Genexxa	3063, 3014, 3021, 3020
	Goldmund	3106
	Grundig	3106
H	Harman/Kardon	3106
	Harmon	3022, 3023, 3051
	Hitachi	3063, 3020
I	Inkel	3024
	Integra	3110
J	JC Penney	3012, 3020, 3025
	JVC	3026, 3027
K	Kardon	3022, 3051, 3023
	Kenwood	3106, 3028, 3029, 3030, 3031, 3032, 3033
	Krell	3106, 3010
L	Linn	3106
	Loewe	3106
	Luxman	3109, 3035, 3036, 3037, 3038
	LX I	3012, 3020, 3014
M	Magnavox	3106, 3010, 3039, 3040
	Marantz	3000, 3106, 3010, 3041, 3042, 3043
	Mathes	3012, 3020
	Matsui	3106
	MCS	3012, 3020
	Memorex	3063

	Meridian	3106
	MGA	3023
	Micromega	3106
	Mission	3106, 3010
	Mitsubishi	3023, 3044
	Musical Fidelity	3109
	Myryad	3106
N	NAD	3097, 3034, 3045
	Naim	3106
	Nakamichi	3046, 3047, 3048
	NEC MCS	3025
	Nikko	3007, 3016
	NSM	3106
O	Onkyo	3110, 3049, 3050, 3051, 3052, 3055, 3102, 3103
	Optimus	3063, 3097, 3011, 3014, 3020, 3028, 3053, 3054, 3056, 3057, 3058
	Orion	3109
P	Panasonic	3008, 3060, 3061
	Philips	3106, 3009, 3010, 3040
	Pioneer	3110, 3020, 3021, 3062, 3063, 3064
	Primare	3106
	Proton	3106
Q	QED	3106
	Quad	3106
	Quasar	3008
R	Radiola	3106

	RCA	3063, 3011, 3014, 3065, 3066, 3067, 3068, 3069		Technica	3007, 3008, 3061, 3087, 3088
	Realistic	3011, 3014, 3020, 3042, 3054, 3057		Theta Digital	3040
	Restek	3106		Thorens	3106
	Revox	3106		Thule Audio	3106
	Rotel	3106, 3010		Toshiba	3045
	RS Original	3070	**U**	Universum	3106
S	SAE	3106, 3010, 3083	**V**	Victor	3026
	Samsung	3071	**W**	Wadia	3109
	Sansui	3106, 3014, 3068, 3072, 3073		Wards	3106, 3063, 3097
	Sanyo	3011, 3018, 3074, 3075, 3076	**Y**	Yamaha	3105, 3063, 3007, 3089, 3090, 3091, 3092
	Scott	3014	**Z**	Zenith	3016, 3093, 3094, 3095, 3096
	Sears	3012, 3014, 3020, 3028, 3042			
	Sharp	3028, 3042, 3077			
	Sherwood	3042, 3056, 3070, 3078, 3024			
	Shure	3025			
	Siemens	3106			
	Simaudio	3106			
	Sonic Frontiers	3106			
	Sony	3039, 3079, 3080, 3081, 3082, 3097, 3098, 3099, 3100, 3101			
	Sylvania	3010			
	Symphonic	3083			
T	TAG McLaren	3106			
	Tandy	3063			
	Teac	3109, 3016, 3042, 3057, 3083, 3084, 3085, 3086			

11

Microphone Stand Assembly Instructions

1

2
C → C → B → B → A → A

3

4

5

6

SETUP MIC

SETUP MIC
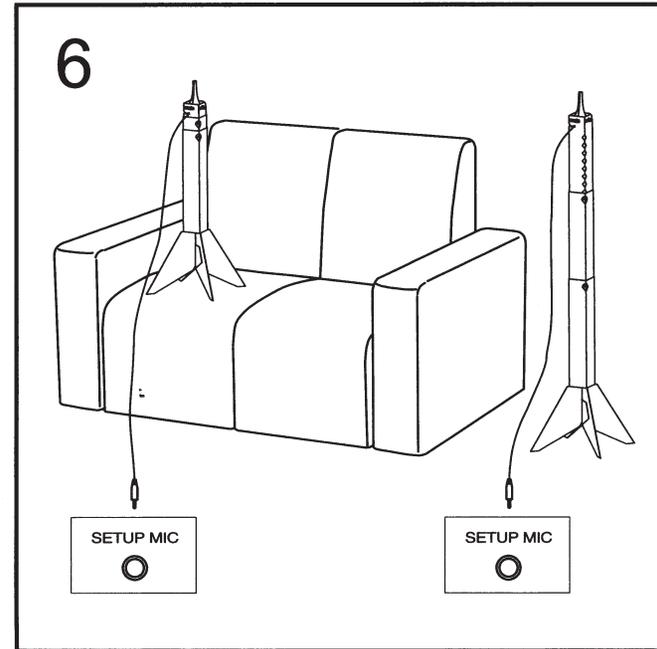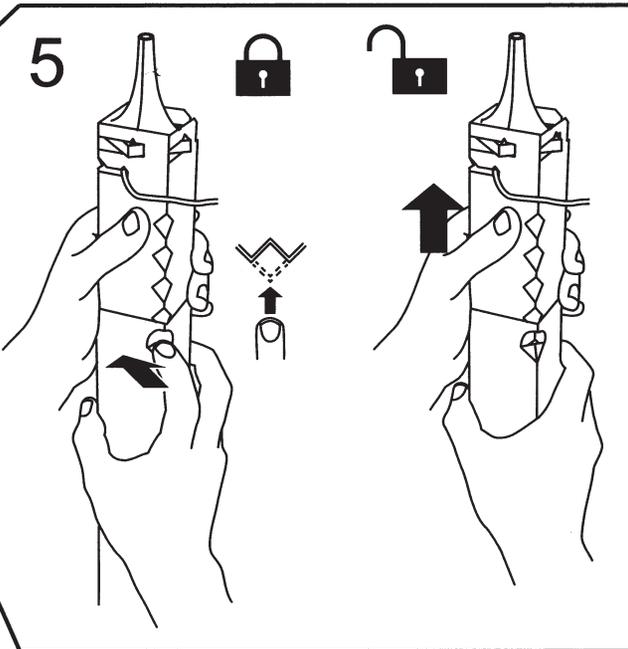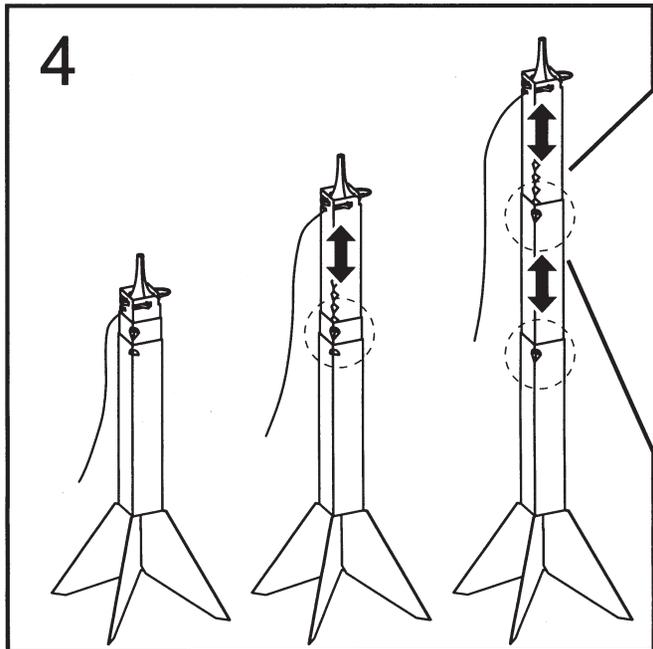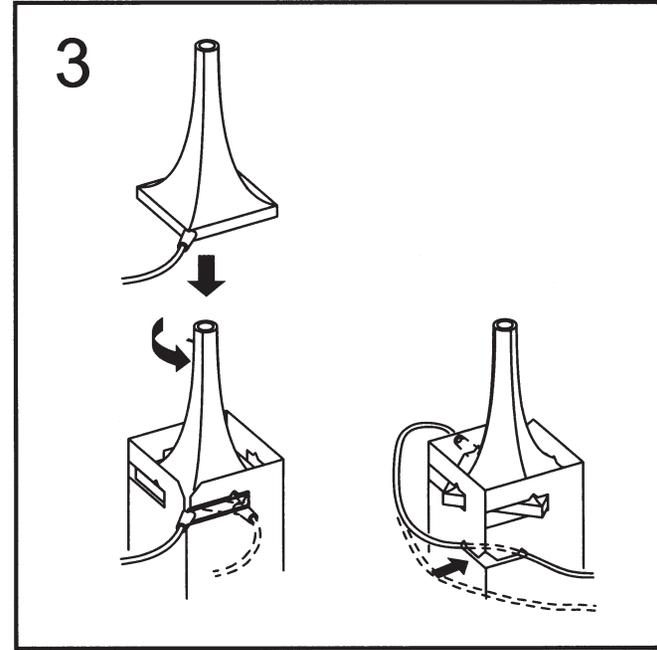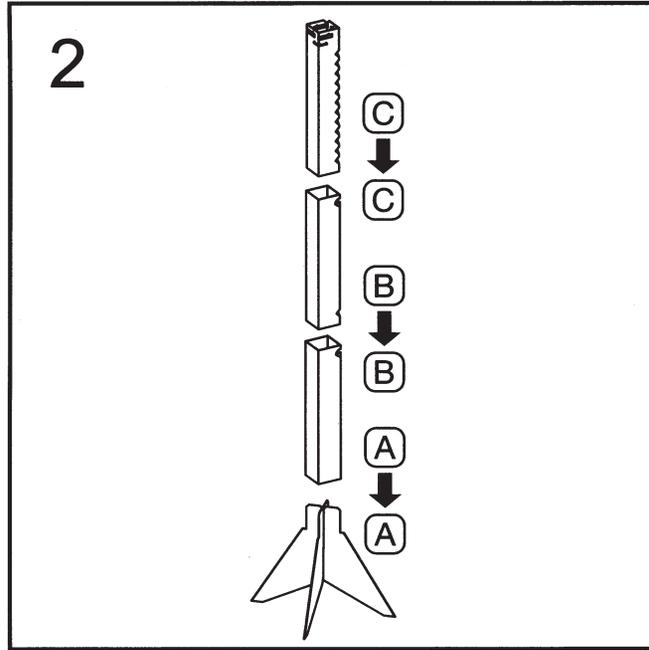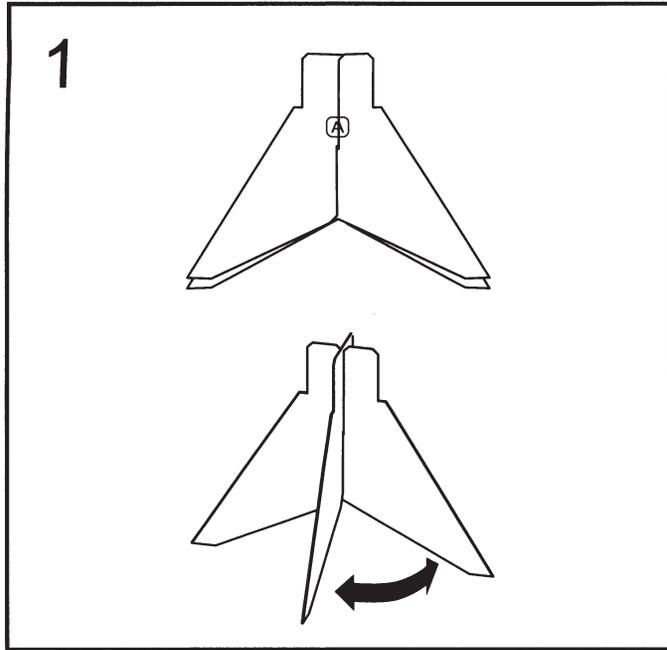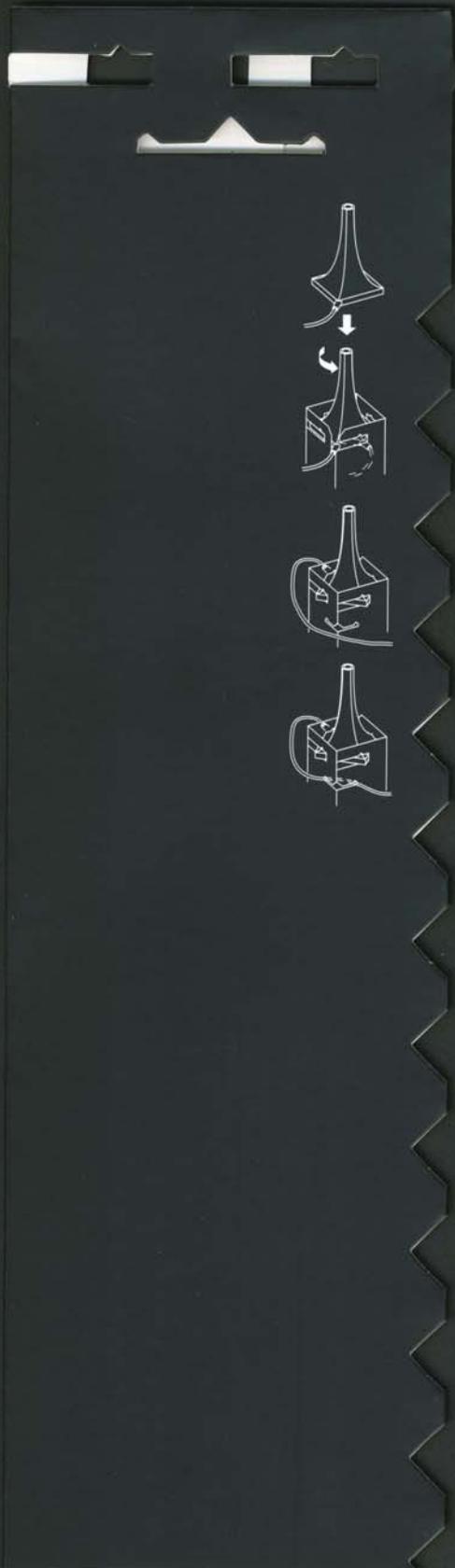
C
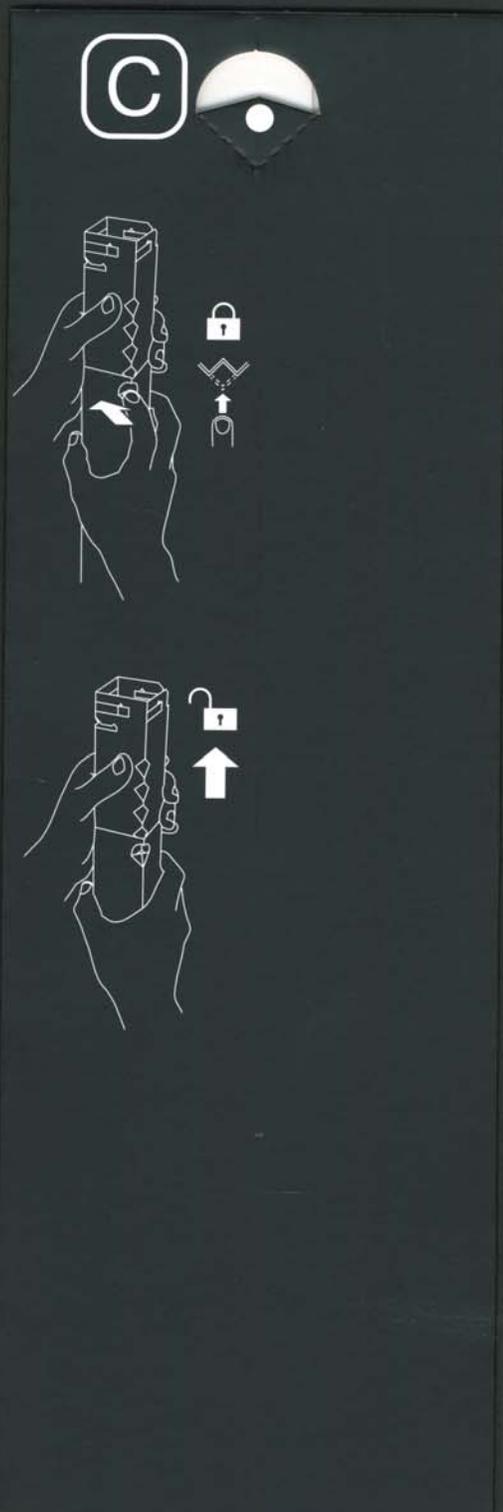
B
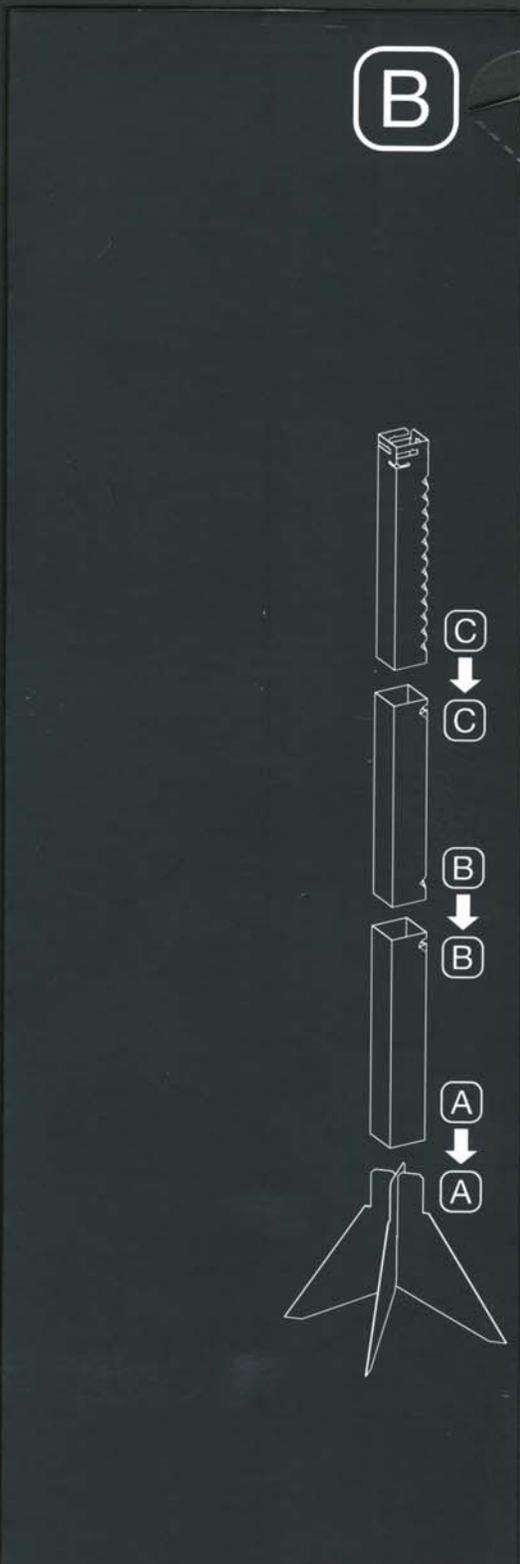
A

How to use Connect

You'll need Spotify Premium to use Connect, see details overleaf.

1. Add your new device to the same wifi network as your phone, tablet or PC (see product user instructions for details).

2. Open the Spotify app on your phone, tablet or PC, and play any song.

3. If you're using the app on a phone - tap the song image in the bottom left of the screen. For tablet and PC move to step 4.

4. Tap the Connect icon 🔊

5. Pick your device from the list. If you can't see it, just check it's connected to the same wifi network as your phone, tablet or PC.

All done! Happy listening.

Spotify | 🔊

Say hello to Spotify Premium

Spotify Premium lets you listen to millions of songs ad-free – the artists you love, the latest hits and discoveries just for you. Simply hit play to hear any song you like, at the highest sound quality.

Check out our current Premium offers at **spotify.com/premium**

Your new device has Spotify Connect built in.

Spotify Connect lets you control the music playing on your device, using the Spotify app on your mobile, tablet or PC.

Listening is seamless. You can take calls, play games, even switch your phone off – all without interrupting the music.

Learn more at **spotify.com/connect**

Spotify

VQE1A821Z

Safety Instructions (Read these safety instructions before operating the unit.)

marantz

❏ SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN

CAUTION:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.

The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

WARNING:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

❏ IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings.
   Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.
15. Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

❏ FCC INFORMATION (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION
This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
  Marantz America, LLC. (a D&M Holdings Company)
  100 Corporate Drive, Mahwah, NJ, 07430, U.S.A.
  Tel. 201-762-6500

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by Marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. NOTE
This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.
This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
• Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
• Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
• Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
• Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

4. IMPORTANT (For Network model)
When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

5. CAUTION (For Bluetooth/Wi-Fi model)
• To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirement, separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between this product and all persons.
• This product and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

❏ IC INFORMATION (For Canadian customers)
CAN ICES-3(B)/NMB-3(B)

CAUTION:
To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet. The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

PRECAUTION:
Pour déconnecter complètement ce produit du courant secteur, débranchez la prise de la prise murale. La prise secteur est utilisée pour couper complètement l'alimentation de l'appareil et l'utilisateur doit pouvoir y accéder facilement.

PRECAUCIÓN:
Para desconectar completamente este producto de la alimentación eléctrica, desconecte el enchufe del enchufe de la pared.
El enchufe de la alimentación eléctrica se utiliza para interrumpir por completo el suministro de alimentación eléctrica a la unidad y debe de encontrarse en un lugar al que el usuario tenga fácil acceso.

ATENÇÃO:
Para desligar este produto completamente da tomada de alimentação, retire a ficha da tomada de alimentação. A ficha da tomada de alimentação é utilizada para cortar completamente a alimentação de corrente à unidade e tem de estar facilmente acessível ao utilizador.

CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION
For proper heat dispersal, do not install this unit in a confined space, such as a bookcase or similar enclosure.
• Amplifier: 0.3 m or more
• Other units: 0.1 m or more

PRÉCAUTIONS D'INSTALLATION
Pour permettre la dissipation de chaleur requise, n'installez pas cette unité dans un espace confiné tel qu'une bibliothèque ou un endroit similaire.
• Amplificateur: 0,3 m ou plus
• Autres appareils: 0,1 m ou plus

EMPLAZAMIENTO DE LA INSTALACIÓN
Para la dispersión del calor adecuadamente, no instale este equipo en un lugar confinado tal como una librería o unidad similar.
• Amplificador: 0,3 m o más
• Otras unidades: 0,1 m o más

PRECAUÇÕES DE INSTALAÇÃO
Para uma correcta dispersão do calor, não instale esta unidade num espaço confinado, como uma estante de livros ou uma estrutura semelhante.
• Amplificador: 0.3 m ou mais
• Outros unidades: 0.1 m ou mais

❏ NOTES ON USE / OBSERVATIONS RELATIVES A L'UTILISATION / NOTAS SOBRE EL USO /NOTAS SOBRE A UTILIZAÇÃO

WARNINGS	AVERTISSEMENTS	ADVERTENCIAS	AVISOS
• Avoid high temperatures. • Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed in a rack. • Handle the power cord carefully. • Hold the plug when unplugging the cord. • Keep the unit free from moisture, water, and dust. • Unplug the power cord when not using the unit for long periods of time. • Do not obstruct the ventilation holes. • Do not let foreign objects into the unit. • Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the unit. • Never disassemble or modify the unit in any way. • Ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains. • Naked flame sources such as lighted candles should not be placed on the unit. • Observe and follow local regulations regarding battery disposal. • Do not expose the unit to dripping or splashing fluids. • Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on the unit. • Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands. • When the switch is in the OFF (STANDBY) position, the equipment is not completely switched off from MAINS. • The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible. • Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater. • Do not bend forcedly the plug on the equipment for the connection between the connector and micro USB/USB cable.	• Eviter des températures élevées. • Tenir compte d'une dispersion de chaleur suffisante lors de l'installation sur une étagère. • Manipuler le cordon d'alimentation avec précaution. • Tenir la prise lors du débranchement du cordon. • Protéger l'appareil contre l'humidité, l'eau et la poussière. • Débrancher le cordon d'alimentation lorsque l'appareil n'est pas utilisé pendant de longues périodes. • Ne pas obstruer les trous d'aération. • Ne pas laisser des objets étrangers dans l'appareil. • Ne pas mettre en contact des insecticides, du benzène et un diluant avec l'appareil. • Ne jamais démonter ou modifier l'appareil d'une manière ou d'une autre. • Ne pas recouvrir les orifices de ventilation avec des objets tels que des journaux, nappes ou rideaux. Cela entraverait la ventilation. • Ne jamais placer de flamme nue sur l'appareil, notamment des bougies allumées. • Veillez à respecter les lois en vigueur lorsque vous jetez les piles usagées. • L'appareil ne doit pas être exposé à l'eau ou à l'humidité. • Ne pas poser d'objet contenant du liquide, par exemple un vase, sur l'appareil. • Ne pas manipuler le cordon d'alimentation avec les mains mouillées. • Lorsque l'interrupteur est sur la position OFF (STANDBY), l'appareil n'est pas complètement déconnecté du SECTEUR (MAINS). • L'appareil sera installé près de la source d'alimentation, de sorte que cette dernière soit facilement accessible. • Ne placez pas la pile dans un endroit exposé à la lumière directe du soleil ou dans des endroits présentant des températures extrêmement élevées, par exemple près d'un radiateur. • Ne pliez pas la fiche sur l'appareil en forçant pour connecter la borne au câble micro USB/USB.	• Evite altas temperaturas. • Permite la suficiente dispersión del calor cuando está instalado en la consola. • Maneje el cordón de energía con cuidado. • Sostenga el enchufe cuando desconecte el cordón de energía. • Mantenga el equipo libre de humedad, agua y polvo. • Desconecte el cordón de energía cuando no utilice el equipo por mucho tiempo. • No obstruya los orificios de ventilación. • No deje objetos extraños dentro del equipo. • No permita el contacto de insecticidas, gasolina y diluyentes con el equipo. • Nunca desarme o modifique el equipo de ninguna manera. • La ventilación no debe quedar obstruida por haberse cubierto las aperturas con objetos como periódicos, manteles o cortinas. • No deberán colocarse sobre el aparato fuentes inflamables sin protección, como velas encendidas. • A la hora de deshacerse de las pilas, respete la normativa para el cuidado del medio ambiente. • No exponer el aparato al goteo o salpicaduras cuando se utilice. • No colocar sobre el aparato objetos llenos de líquido, como jarros. • No maneje el cable de alimentación con las manos mojadas. • Cuando el interruptor está en la posición OFF (STANDBY), el equipo no está completamente desconectado de la alimentación MAINS. • El equipo se instalará cerca de la fuente de alimentación de manera que resulte fácil acceder a ella. • No coloque las pilas en un lugar expuesto a la luz directa del sol o donde la temperatura sea extremadamente alta, como cerca de una calefacción. • No doble a la fuerza la clavija del equipo para la conexión entre el conector y el cable micro USB/USB.	• Evite temperaturas altas. • Assegure uma suficiente dispersão do calor quando a unidade for instalada numa prateleira. • Manuseie o cabo de alimentação com cuidado. • Puxe pela ficha quando desligar o cabo de alimentação. • Mantenha a unidade afastada da humidade, da água e do pó. • Desligue o cabo de alimentação quando não estiver a utilizar a unidade por longos períodos de tempo. • Não obstrua os orifícios de ventilação. • Não deixe objectos estranhos dentro da unidade. • Não permita que insecticidas, benzina e diluente entrem em contacto com a unidade. • Nunca desmonte ou modifique de alguma forma a unidade. • A ventilação não deve ser obstruída, tapando as aberturas de ventilação com objectos, como jornais, toalhas ou cortinas. • Não devem ser colocadas junto à unidade fontes de chama aberta, como velas acesas. • Respeite as regulamentações locais relativas à eliminação de pilhas. • Não exponha a unidade a gotejamento ou salpicos de líquidos. • Não coloque objectos com líquidos, como jarras, em cima da unidade. • Não manuseie o cabo de alimentação com as mãos molhadas. • Quando o interruptor se encontra na posição OFF (STANDBY), o equipamento não está completamente desligado da REDE ELÉCTRICA (MAINS). • O equipamento deve ser instalado junto da fonte de alimentação, para que a fonte de alimentação esteja facilmente acessível. • Não mantenha a pilha num local directamente exposto à luz solar ou em locais com temperaturas extremamente elevadas, tal como perto de um aquecedor. • Não dobre forcedly o plugue do equipamento para a conexão entre o conector e cabo USB / micro USB.

CAUTION (FOR AMPLIFIER):

HOT SURFACE. DO NOT TOUCH.
The top surface over the internal heat sink may become hot when operating this product continuously.
Do not touch hot areas, especially around the "Hot surface mark" and the top panel.

PRECAUTION (POUR AMPLIFICATEUR):

SURFACE CHAUDE. NE PAS TOUCHER.
La surface supérieure du dissipateur de chaleur peut devenir chaude si vous utilisez ce produit en continu.
Ne touchez pas les zones chaudes, tout particulièrement vers l'inscription "Hot surface mark" et le panneau supérieur.

PRECAUCIÓN (PARA EL AMPLIFICADOR):

SUPERFICIE CALIENTE. NO TOCAR.
La superficie superior sobre el disipador de calor interno podría llegar a calentarse al operar este producto de forma continua.
No toque las áreas calie ntes, especialmente las situadas alrededor de la "Hot surface mark" y del panel superior.

CUIDADO (PARA O AMPLIFICADOR):

SUPERFÍCIE QUENTE. NÃO TOCAR.
A face superior localizada por cima do dissipador interno de calor pode ficar quente ao funcionar com este produto em modo contínuo.
Não tocar nas zonas quentes, especialmente à volta do "Hot surface mark" e no painel superior.

Hot
surface
mark

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT (FOR DISC PLAYER)

CAUTION:
USE OF CONTROLS OR ADJUSTMENTS OR PERFORMANCE OF PROCEDURES OTHER THAN THOSE SPECIFIED HEREIN MAY RESULT IN HAZARDOUS RADIATION EXPOSURE.
THIS PRODUCT SHOULD NOT BE ADJUSTED OR REPAIRED BY ANYONE EXCEPT PROPERLY QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

PRODUIT LASER CLASSE 1 (POUR LECTEUR DE DISQUE)

ATTENTION:
L'UTILISATION DE COMMANDES, DE RÉGLAGES OU DE PERFORMANCE DE PROCÉDURES AUTRES QUE CELLES SPÉCIFIÉES ICI PEUT ENTRAÎNER UNE EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE À DES RADIATIONS.
CE PRODUIT DOIT UNIQUEMENT ÊTRE RÉGLÉ OU RÉPARÉ PAR UN PERSONNEL DE SERVICE SUFFISAMMENT QUALIFIÉ.

## PRODUCTO LÁSER DE CLASE 1 (PARA EL REPRODUCTOR DE DISCOS)

PRECAUCIÓN:
EL USO DE CONTROLES, AJUSTES, O LA REALIZACIÓN DE PROCEDIMIENTOS DISTINTOS A LOS AQUÍ ESPECIFICADOS, PUEDE PROVOCAR UNA EXPOSICIÓN PELIGROSA A LA RADIACIÓN.
ESTE PRODUCTO NO DEBE SER AJUSTADO O REPARADO POR NINGUNA PERSONA EXCEPTO POR PERSONAL DE SERVICIO DEBIDAMENTE CUALIFICADO.

PRODUTO LASER DE CLASSE 1 (PARA LEITOR DE DISCOS)

CUIDADO:
O USO DE CONTROLOS, AJUSTES OU DESEMPENHO DE PROCEDIMENTOS QUE NÃO OS AQUI ESPECIFICADOS PODE RESULTAR EM EXPOSIÇÃO A RADIAÇÃO PERIGOSA.
ESTE PRODUTO NÃO DEVE SER AJUSTADO OU REPARADO POR NINGUÉM EXCEPTO POR PESSOAL TÉCNICO DEVIDAMENTE QUALIFICADO.

"CLASS 1
LASER PRODUCT"
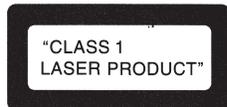
WARNING:

DO NOT INGEST BATTERY, CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
• The remote control supplied with this product contains a coin/button cell battery. If the coin/button cell battery is swallowed, it can cause severe internal burns in just 2 hours and can lead to death.
• Keep new and used batteries away from children. If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children. If you think batteries might have swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate Medical attention.

AVERTISSEMENT:

N'INGÉREZ PAS LA PILE, RISQUE DE BRÛLURE CHIMIQUE
• La télécommande fournie avec ce produit contient une pile bouton. Une ingestion de la pile bouton risque de causer de sévères brûlures internes en à peine 2 heures et peut entraîner la mort.
• Conservez les piles neuves et usagées hors de portée des enfants. Si le compartiment à piles ne se ferme pas de manière sécurisée, arrêtez d'utiliser le produit et conservez-le hors de portée des enfants. Si vous pensez que des piles ont été ingérées ou placées dans n'importe quel orifice corporel, contactez immédiatement une assistance médicale.

ADVERTENCIA:

NO INGERIR LA BATERÍA, RIESGO DE QUEMADURAS POR PRODUCTOS QUÍMICOS
• El control remoto suministrado con este producto contiene una pila de botón. En caso de ingestión, la pila de botón puede causar quemaduras internas graves en solo 2 horas y puede ocasionar la muerte.
• Mantenga las pilas nuevas y usadas fuera del alcance de los niños. Si el compartimento de la pila no se cierra firmemente, deje de utilizar el producto y manténgalo fuera del alcance de los niños. Si cree que se han podido ingerir pilas, o las mismas se encuentran en alguna parte en el interior del cuerpo, solicite atención médica de inmediato.

AVISO:

NÃO INGIRA A PILHA, PERIGO DE QUEIMADURA QUÍMICA
• O controlo remoto fornecido com este produto contém uma pilha de célula moeda/botão. Se a pilha de célula moeda/botão for engolida, pode causar queimaduras internas graves em apenas 2 horas e pode levar à morte.
• Mantenha as pilhas novas e usadas longe das crianças. Se o compartimento da pilha não fechar com firmeza, pare de utilizar o produto e mantenha-o afastado das crianças. Se pensa que as pilhas possam ter sido engolidas ou colocadas dentro de qualquer parte do corpo, procure ajuda médica imediata.

CAUTIONS ON USING BATTERIES

• Insert the specified batteries in the remote control unit.
• Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the remote control unit is operated close to the unit. (The supplied batteries are only for verifying operation. Replace them with new batteries at an early date.)
• When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the ⊕ and ⊖ marks in the battery compartment.
• To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  • Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  • Do not use two different types of batteries.
  • Do not attempt to charge dry batteries.
  • Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
  • Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.
• If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
• Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
• Used batteries should be disposed of in accordance with the local regulations regarding battery disposal.
• The remote control unit may function improperly if rechargeable batteries are used.

PRÉCAUTIONS RELATIVES À l'UTILISATION DES PILES

• Insérez les piles spécifiées dans la télécommande.
• Remplacez les piles si l'appareil ne fonctionne pas même lorsque la télécommande est actionnée à proximité. (Les piles fournies ne servent qu'aux opérations de vérification. Remplacez-les par des piles neuves sans attendre.)
• Lorsque vous insérez les piles, assurez-vous de les placer dans le bon sens, en respectant les marques ⊕ et ⊖ qui figurent dans le compartiment à piles.
• Pour éviter un endommagement de la télécommande ou une fuite du liquide des piles:
  • Ne pas mélanger piles neuves et anciennes.
  • Ne pas utiliser deux types de piles différents.
  • Ne pas essayer de charger de piles sèches.
  • Ne pas court-circuiter, démonter, chauffer ou brûler les piles.
  • Ne placez pas la pile dans un endroit exposé à la lumière directe du soleil ou dans des endroits présentant des températures extrêmement élevées, par exemple près d'un radiateur.
• En cas de fuite du liquide de pile, essuyez soigneusement l'intérieur du compartiment avant d'insérer de nouvelles piles.
• Ôtez les piles de la télécommande si vous ne l'utilisez pas pendant longtemps.
• Veuillez vous débarrasser des piles usagées conformément aux lois locales relatives à la mise au rebut des piles.
• La télécommande risque de ne pas fonctionner correctement en cas d'utilisation de piles rechargeables.

AVISOS SOBRE DE LAS PILAS

• Introduzca las pilas especificadas en el mando a distancia.
• Ponga pilas nuevas si el equipo no funciona ni siquiera si el mando a distancia se pone muy cerca. (Las pilas que se entregan con la unidad solo sirven para verificar que funciona. Cámbielas por pilas nuevas lo antes posible.)
• Cuando inserte las baterías, asegúrese de hacerlo en la dirección correcta, según las marcas ⊕ y ⊖ en el compartimento de baterías.
• Para evitar daños o derrames del fluido de la batería:
  • No utilice una nueva batería junto con una ya utilizada.
  • No utilice dos tipos diferentes de baterías.
  • No intente cargar baterías secas.
  • No corto circuíte, desensamble, caliente o queme las baterías.
  • No coloque las pilas en un lugar expuesto a la luz directa del sol o donde la temperatura sea extremadamente alta, como cerca de una calefacción.
• Si hay fluido de batería, limpie cuidadosamente el fluido en el compartimiento de las baterías e inserte unas nuevas.
• Retire las baterías del mando a distancia si no lo va a utilizar por una largo periodo de tiempo.
• Las pilas usadas deben desecharse de acuerdo a las regulaciones locales concernientes al desecho de pilas.
• Puede que el mando a distancia no funcione correctamente si se utilizan pilas recargables.

CUIDADOS NA UTILIZAÇÃO PILHAS

• Coloque as pilhas indicadas na unidade de controlo remoto.
• Substitua as pilhas por novas se o conjunto não funcionar mesmo accionando a unidade de controlo remoto próximo da unidade. (As pilhas fornecidas destinam-se apenas à verificação do correcto funcionamento da unidade.)
• Ao colocar as pilhas, certifique-se de que as coloca na direcção correcta, seguindo as indicações ⊕ e ⊖ existentes no compartimento das pilhas.
• Para evitar danos ou derrame de líquido das pilhas:
  • Não utilize uma pilha nova em conjunto com uma usada.
  • Não utilize dois tipos diferentes de pilhas.
  • Não tente carregar pilhas secas.
  • Não faça a ligação em curto-circuito, não desmonte, não aqueça nem queime as pilhas numa fogueira.
  • Não coloque as pilhas num local exposto à luz directa do sol nem em locais com temperaturas extremamente elevadas como, por exemplo, próximo de um aquecedor.
• Em caso de derrame de líquido das pilhas, limpe cuidadosamente o líquido do interior do compartimento das pilhas e coloque pilhas novas.
• Retire as pilhas da unidade de controlo remoto caso não a vá utilizar durante longos períodos de tempo.
• As pilhas usadas devem ser descartadas em conformidade com os regulamentos locais relativos à eliminação de pilhas/baterias.
• A unidade de controlo remoto poderá não funcionar correctamente se forem utilizadas pilhas recarregáveis.

marantz®
www.marantz.com

USA CANADA

FCC Information (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION
- **Product Name: AV Surround Receiver / AV Pre Tuner / AV Surround Amplifier**
- **Model Number: NR1508 / NR1608 / SR5012 / SR6012 / SR7012 / SR8012 / AV7704 / AV8805**
- **CONTAINS TRANSMITTER MODULE FCC ID: RAX-AIOS4-0S**

This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Marantz America, LLC.
(a D&M Holdings Company)
100 Corporate Drive,
Mahwah, NJ, 07430, U.S.A.
Tel. 201-762-6500

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by Marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. IMPORTANT (For Network)
When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer. Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

4. CAUTION (For Bluetooth/Wi-Fi)
- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirement, separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between this product and all persons.
- This product and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

5. NOTE
This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.
This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio / TV technician for help.

INFORMATION FCC (Pour la clientèle étasunienne)

1. INFORMATIONS DE CONFORMITE
- **Nom du produit: Récepteur Audio-Vidéo / Pré-tuner AV / Amplificateur Surround Audio-Vidéo**
- **Numéro de modèle: NR1508 / NR1608 / SR5012 / SR6012 / SR7012 / AV7704 / SR8012**
- **CONTIENT MODULE ÉMETTEUR FCC ID: RAX-AIOS4-0S**

Ce produit est conforme à la section 15 du règlement FCC. L'utilisation est sujette aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) ce produit ne provoque pas d'interférences nocives et (2) ce produit doit accepter toute interférence, y compris les interférences pouvant entraîner un fonctionnement non souhaitable.

Marantz America, LLC.
(a D&M Holdings Company)
100 Corporate Drive,
Mahwah, NJ, 07430, U.S.A.
Tel. 201-762-6500

2. REMARQUE IMPORTANTE: NE PAS MODIFIER CE PRODUIT
Ce produit, lorsqu'il est installé comme indiqué dans les instructions de ce manuel, est conforme aux normes FCC. Les modifications qui ne sont pas expressément approuvées par Marantz peuvent annuler l'autorisation FCC à utiliser le produit.

3. IMPORTANT (Pour réseau)
Lors du branchement de ce produit à un routeur ou à un concentrateur réseau, n'utilisez qu'un câble STP ou ScTP LAN blindé (disponible chez un détaillant). Suivre toutes instructions d'installation. Dans le cas contraire, cela pourrait annuler l'autorisation FCC à utiliser cet appareil.

4. PRECAUTION (Pour Bluetooth/Wi-Fi)
- Afin de répondre aux exigences de conformité FCC sur l'exposition aux RF, une distance d'au moins 20 cm doit être maintenue entre cet appareil et toutes les personnes.
- Cet appareil ainsi que son antenne ne doivent pas se trouver à proximité immédiate, ni être utilisés en association avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur.

5. NOTE
Ce produit a été testé et il est conforme aux limitations des dispositifs numériques de Class B, en vertu de la section 15 du règlement FCC. Ces limitations sont conçues pour fournir une protection raisonnable contre les interférences nocives sur une installation résidentielle.
Ce produit génère, utilise et émet de l'énergie de radiofréquence et s'il n'est pas installé et utilisé conformément aux instructions, il peut entraîner des interférences néfastes avec les communications radio. Toutefois, nous ne pouvons pas garantir l'absence d'interférence avec certaines installations. En cas d'interférences néfastes sur la réception de la radio ou de la télévision provoquées par cet appareil, survenant au moment de l'activation ON ou de la désactivation OFF, nous conseillons à l'utilisateur d'essayer de corriger l'interférence comme suit:
- Réorienter ou déplacer l'antenne.
- Augmenter la distance entre l'équipement et le récepteur.
- Connecter l'appareil à la prise murale d'un circuit différent de celui du récepteur.
- Consulter un revendeur local agréé pour la distribution de ce type de produit ou un technicien radio / TV expérimenté.

IC Information (For Canadian customers)

1. PRODUCT
CONTAINS TRANSMITTER MODULE IC: 4711A-AIOS40S
This product complies with RSS-247 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

2. CAUTION
To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that permitted for successful communication.
(i) the device for operation in the band 5,150 – 5,250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.
(ii) high-power radars are allocated as primary users (i.e. priority users) of the bands 5,250 – 5,350 MHz and 5,650 – 5,850 MHz and that these radars could cause interference and/or damage to LE-LAN devices.

Informations sur IC (pour les clients canadiens)

1. APPAREIL
CONTIENT MODULE ÉMETTEUR IC: 4711A-AIOS40S
Cet appareil est conforme à la norme CNR-247 du Canada. L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif. Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

2. ATTENTION
Afin de réduire le risque d'interférence aux autres utilisateurs, il faut choisir le type d'antenne et son gain de façon à ce que la puissance isotrope rayonnée équivalente (p.i.r.e) ne soit pas supérieure au niveau requis pour l'obtention d'une communication satisfaisante.
(i) les dispositifs fonctionnant dans la bande 5 150 – 5 250 MHz sont réservés uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.
(ii) De plus, les utilisateurs devraient aussi être avisés que les utilisateurs de radars de haute puissance sont désignés utilisateurs principaux (c.-à-d., qu'ils ont la priorité) pour les bandes 5 250 – 5 350 MHz et 5 650 – 5 850 MHz et que ces radars pourraient causer du brouillage et/ou des dommages aux dispositifs LAN-EL.

For Canadian customers / Pour les clients canadiens:
CAN ICES-3 (B) / NMB-3 (B)
"for indoor use only"

☐ RF Exposure Information

This equipment complies with FCC / IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that are deemed to comply without testing of specific absorption ratio (SAR).

Cet équipement est conforme aux normes d'exposition aux radiations FCC / IC définies pour un environnement non contrôlé et satisfait les directives d'exposition à la radiofréquence (RF) dans le supplément C des OET65 et RSS-102 des règles d'exposition à la fréquence radio (RF) IC. Cet équipement a de très faibles niveaux d'énergie RF qui sont jugés conformes sans test de taux d'absorption spécifique (SAR).

EU CE

[ENGLISH]
1. DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
Our products following the provisions of EC/EU directives, that as follows;
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets RE directive requirements. Modification of the product could result in hazardous Radio and EMC radiation.
3. CAUTION
Separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between this product and all persons. This product and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

[DEUTSCH]
1. ÜBEREINSTIMMUNGSERKLÄRUNG
Unsere Produkte unterliegen den Bestimmungen der folgenden EG/EU-Richtlinien:
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. WICHTIGER HINWEIS: NEHMEN SIE KEINE VERÄNDERUNGEN AN DIESEM PRODUKT VOR
Wenn dieses Produkt entsprechend dieser Bedienungsanleitung aufgebaut wird, entspricht es den Anforderungen der RE-Richtlinie. Veränderungen am Produkt können zu gefährlicher Funk- und EMV-Strahlung führen.
3. VORSICHT
Zwischen dieses Produkts und Personen muss ein Schutzabstand von 20 cm eingehalten werden. Dieses Produkt und seine Antenne dürfen nicht neben anderen Antennen oder Sendern aufgestellt oder zusammen mit ihnen verwendet werden.

[FRANÇAIS]
1. DECLARATION DE CONFORMITE
Nos produits sont conformes aux dispositions des directives CE/UE comme suit ;
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. MISE EN GARDE IMPORTANTE : NE JAMAIS MODIFIER CE PRODUIT
Si tous les consignes indiquées dans ce mode ont été respectées pendant son installation, ce produit est conforme aux directives RE. Toute modification du produit risquerait alors de générer des radiations radio et EMC dangereuses.
3. ATTENTION
L'appareil devra être située à une distance de 20 cm au moins des personnes.
Ce produit ainsi que son antenne ne devront en aucun cas être utilisés à proximité d'une autre antenne ou transmetteur.

[ITALIANO]
1. DICHIARAZIONE DI CONFORMITÀ
I nostri prodotti sono conformi a quanto previsto dalle direttive EC/EU, come specificato di seguito:
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. AVVERTENZA IMPORTANTE: NON MODIFICARE QUESTO PRODOTTO
Se installato come indicato nelle istruzioni del presente manuale, questo prodotto soddisfa i requisiti della direttiva RE. Eventuali modifiche apportate al prodotto potrebbero causare pericolose radiazioni radio ed EMC.
3. ATTENZIONE
È necessario mantenere una distanza minima di 20 cm tra questo prodotto e le persone. Questo prodotto e la relativa antenna non devono essere posizionati in prossimità di altre antenne o trasmettitori e non devono essere utilizzati congiuntamente a questi ultimi.

[ESPAÑOL]
1. DECLARACIÓN DE CONFORMIDAD
Nuestros productos cumplen las disposiciones de las directivas de la CE/UE siguientes:
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. NOTA IMPORTANTE: NO MODIFIQUE ESTE PRODUCTO
Este producto, si es instalado de acuerdo con las instrucciones contenidas en este manual, cumple los requisitos de la directiva RE. La modificación del producto puede producir radiación de Radio y EMC peligrosa.
3. PRECAUCIÓN
Se debe mantener una separación de al menos 20 cm del producto y las personas. Este producto y su antena no debe instalarse ni utilizarse conjuntamente con otra antena o transmisor.

[NEDERLANDS]
1. EENVORMIGHEIDSVERKLARING
Onze producten volgen de voorwaarden van de EG/EU-richtlijnen zoals volgt;
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. BELANGRIJKE MEDEDELING: BRENG AAN DIT PRODUCT GEEN AANPASSINGEN AAN
Dit product, indien geïnstalleerd volgens de aanwijzingen in deze gebruiksaanwijzing, voldoet aan de vereisten van de RE-richtlijn. Aanpassing van dit product kan gevaarlijke radio- en EMC-straling tot gevolg hebben.
3. LET OP
Houd tussen en personen altijd een afstand van tenminste 20 cm aan.
Dit product en zijn antenne mogen niet in de buurt van een andere antenne of zender worden geplaatst of in combinatie daarmee worden gebruikt.

[SVENSKA]
1. ÖVERENSSTÄMMELSESINTYG
Våra produkter uppfyller följande föreskrifter i EC/EU-direktiv:
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. VIKTIGT: APPARATEN FÅR INTE MODIFIERAS
Under förutsättning att apparaten installeras enligt anvisningarna i denna bruksanvisning, uppfyller denna kraven i RE-direktivet. Ev. modifiering av apparaten kan resultera i farlig radio- och elektromagnetisk strålning.
3. FÖRSIKTIGT
Se till att det finns ett avstånd på minst 20 cm mellan apparatens och personer in omgivningen. Apparaten och dess antenn får inte placeras eller användas i närheten av andra antenner eller sändare.

[РУССКИЙ]
1. СЕРТИФИКАТ СООТВЕТСТВИЯ
Наши продукты соответствуют следующим положениями директивы ЕЭС/ЕС:
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. ВАЖНО! НЕ ИЗМЕНЯЙТЕ ДАННЫЙ ПРОДУКТ
Продукт, установленный согласно инструкциям в настоящем руководстве, отвечает требованиям директивы RE. Изменение продукта может привести к появлению опасного электромагнитного излучения.
3. ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ
Не приближайтесь к данного изделия ближе, чем на 20 см.
Запрещается использовать данный продукт и антенну с другой антенной или передатчиком.

[POLSKI]
1. DEKLARACJA ZGODNOŚCI
Nasze produkty zgodnie z postanowieniami KE/UE, tj.
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
2. UWAGA: MODYFIKACJA TEGO URZĄDZENIA JEST ZABRONIONA
Po zainstalowaniu zgodnie z instrukcjami zawartymi w niniejszej instrukcji obsługi urządzenie to będzie spełniać wymogi dyrektywy RE. Wprowadzenie modyfikacji do tego urządzenia może skutkować powstaniem niebezpiecznego promieniowania elektromagnetycznego oraz radiowego.
3. OSTRZEŻENIE
Między tego produktu i wszelkimi osobami musi być zachowana odległość przynajmniej 20 cm. Urządzenia wraz z anteną nie można instalować w połączeniu z inną anteną lub nadajnikiem.

D&M Europe B.V.
Beemdstraat 11, 5653 MA Eindhoven, The Netherlands
EU declaration of conformity URL:
http://manuals.marantz.com/CEdeclaration

[ENGLISH]
5,150 – 5,350 MHz is restricted to indoor use only
[DEUTSCH]
5,150 – 5.350 MHz darf nur in geschlossenen Räumen verwendet werden
[FRANÇAIS]
5 150 – 5 350 MHz est limité à une utilisation en intérieur uniquement
[ITALIANO]
La frequenza 5.150 – 5.350 MHz è limitata al solo uso interno
[ESPAÑOL]
5.150 – 5.350 MHz está restringido al uso en interiores solamente
[NEDERLANDS]
5.150 – 5.350 MHz is beperkt tot alleen binnenshuis gebruik
[SVENSKA]
5 150 – 5 350 MHz är begränsat till inomhusbruk
[РУССКИЙ]
5150 – 5350 МГц ограничивается использованием только в помещении
[POLSKI]
5 150 – 5 350 MHz to częstotliwość ograniczona do użytkowania jedynie w pomieszczeniach

CE
RE Directive 2014/53/EU
This product may be operated in the following countries;

AT	BE	CZ	DK	FI
FR	DE	GR	HU	IE
IT	NL	PL	PT	SK
ES	SE	GB	NO	CH

Radio Specification (for Europe model)

Type	Frequency Range	Max. RF Power
Bluetooth	2,402 – 2,480 MHz	20 dBm
WLAN (2.4 GHz)	2,400 – 2,483.5 MHz	20 dBm
5 GHz Radio	5,150 – 5,250 MHz	23 dBm
	5,250 – 5,350 MHz	23 dBm
	5,470 – 5,725 MHz	30 dBm

＊ Note: The above specifications is based on the RE Directive.
There is a possibility to varies by countries.

日本

❏ 電波に関するご注意

本機は電波法に基づく工事設計認証を取得した小電力データ通信システムの無線局設備を内蔵しています。

- 本機を使用するときに無線局の免許は必要ありません。
- ※ 以下のことをおこなうと法律で罰せられることがあります。
- 内蔵する小電力データ通信システムの無線局設備を分解 / 改造すること
- 内蔵する小電力データ通信システムの無線局設備に貼ってある証明ラベルをはがすこと
- この機器の使用周波数帯（2.4GHz/5GHz）は、以下のように無線周波数が利用されています。
  - 電子レンジ等の産業・科学・医療用機器
  - 工場の製造ライン等で使用されている移動体識別用の構内無線局（免許を要する無線局）
  - 特定小電力無線局（免許を要しない無線局）
  - アマチュア無線局（免許を要する無線局）
  - 航空無線航行用途
  - 気象レーダーや GPS 衛星、宇宙探査衛星等の宇宙開発用途
  - 海上無線航行用途（船舶レーダー等）
1. この機器を使用する前に、近くで上記の無線局が運用されていないことを確認してください。
2. 万が一、この機器から上記の無線局に対して有害な電波干渉の事例が発生した場合には、速やかに使用周波数を変更するか、または電波の発射を停止した上、下記連絡先にご連絡いただき、混信回避のための処置等についてご相談してください。
3. その他、この機器から上記の無線局に対して有害な電波干渉の事例が発生した場合など、何かお困りのことが起きたときには、次の連絡先へお問い合わせください。

連絡先：
株式会社 ディーアンドエムホールディングス
マランツお客様相談センター
0570（666）112
http://marantz.jp/jp/html/contact.html

◎ 現品表示について

（表示例）　| 2.4 DS/OF 4 |　| 2.4 FH 1 |

2.4 ： 2.4GHz 帯を使用する無線設備を表します。
DS/OF/FH ： 変調方式を表します。
4/1 ： 移動体識別装置の構内無線局に対して想定される与干渉距離を表します（約：表示値× 10 m）。
━ ━ ━ ： 2.4GHz 帯の全帯域を使用し、かつ移動体識別装置の帯域を回避可能であることを意味します。
━━━ ： 2.4GHz 帯の全帯域を使用し、かつ移動体識別装置の帯域が回避不可であることを意味します。

（表示例）　| IEEE802.11b/g/n |　| IEEE802.11a/n/ac |　| J52 | W52 | W53 | W56 |

IEEE802.11b/g/n/a/ac ： 対応している無線 LAN 規格を表します。
W52 ： 対応している 5GHz 無線 LAN 周波数帯を表します。
J52 ： 対応していない 5GHz 無線 LAN 周波数帯を表します。

- 電波法により、5,150～5,350MHz の周波数使用は、屋内のみに制限されています。
- 本機では、2.4GHz/5GHz の周波数帯の電波を利用している関係で、下記機器と干渉し、音が途切れたり雑音が発生したりする可能性があります。
  【2.4GHz/5GHz の周波数帯を使用している主な機器】
  - 電子レンジ
  - 無線 LAN を利用した機器（ノートパソコン、無線ルーター、無線 LAN 対応 AV 機器等）
  - スマートフォン / コードレスフォン
  - Bluetooth 対応機器
  - ワイヤレス対応 AV 機器
  - ワイヤレスコントローラー
- ※ 音が途切れたり雑音が発生したりする場合には、下記の方法で改善する可能性があります。
  1. 干渉している機器との距離を離す。
  2. 干渉している機器の電源を切る。
- ◎ ペースメーカー等の医療用電気機器をご使用の場合には、各医療用電気機器メーカーまたは販売店に電波による影響をご確認の上ご使用ください。
- ◎ 人ごみの中で使用したり、本機の間に鉄筋コンクリートの壁や家具などの障害物があると、通信状態が悪くなり音が途切れたり、雑音が発生したりすることがあります。音が途切れたり、雑音が発生したりする場合には、見通しの良い場所に設置し直してください。
- ◎ 設置の距離や障害物がない場合でも、電波の反射等により受信がうまくいかない場合があります。その場合には本機の向きや位置を変えると改善することがあります。
- ◎ ラジオやテレビ、BS/CS チューナーなどの電波を利用した機器のそばで使用すると、ノイズを発生することがあります。その場合には機器から遠ざけて設置してください。
- ◎ 本機は盗聴防止機能を搭載しておりますが、第三者が故意または偶然に受信する可能性があります。
- ◎ 本機はご家庭内での音楽、映画等の再生を目的にしたホームエンターテイメントシステムです。他の環境、目的での使用はおやめください。

KOREA

해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다 .
B 급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재)
이 기기는 가정용 (B 급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며 , 모든지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다 .
해당 무선설비는 운용 중 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다 .

臺灣

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

中国

❏ 中国无线电管理规定（SRRC）

第十三条

1. 使用频率：2.4 ~ 2.4835GHz：
   - 等效全向辐射功率（EIRP）：
     天线增益＜ 10dBi 时：≤ 100mW 或≤ 20dBm ①
     天线增益≥ 10dBi 时：≤ 500mW 或≤ 27dBm ②
   - 最大功率谱密度：
     天线增益＜ 10dBi 时：≤ 20dBm / MHz（EIRP）①
     天线增益≥ 10dBi 时：≤ 27dBm / MHz（EIRP）②
   - 载频容限：20ppm
   - 外发射功率（在 2.4 ~ 2.4835GHz 段以外）
     ≤ -80dBm / Hz（EIRP）
   - 杂散发射（辐射）功率（对应载波 ±2.5 倍信道带宽以外）：
     ≤ -36dBm / 100kHz（30 ~ 1000MHz）
     ≤ -33dBm / 100kHz（2.4 ~ 2.4835GHz）
     ≤ -40dBm / 1MHz（3.4 ~ 3.53GHz）
     ≤ -40dBm / 1MHz（5.725 ~ 5.85GHz）
     ≤ -30dBm / 1MHz（其它 1 ~ 12.75GHz）

1. 工作频率范围：5150 ~ 5350MHz：
   - 等效全向辐射功率（EIRP）：≤ 200mW
   - 最大功率谱密度：≤ 10dBm / MHz
   - 载频容限：20ppm
   - 带外发射功率（EIRP）：≤ -80dBm / Hz
   - 杂散发射（辐射）功率：
     ≤ -36dBm / 100kHz（30 ~ 1000MHz）
     ≤ -54dBm / 100kHz（48.5 ~ 72.5MHz,
     76 ~ 118MHz, 167 ~ 223MHz, 470 ~ 798MHz）
     ≤ -40dBm / 1MHz（2400 ~ 2483.5MHz）
     ≤ -33dBm / 100KHz（5150 ~ 5350MHz）
     ≤ -40dBm / 1MHz（5470 ~ 5850MHz）
     ≤ -30dBm / 1MHz（其它 1 ~ 40GHz）

   ※ 此产品仅限于在室内使用，以降低对 5150 至
   5350MHz 频率有害干扰。

1. 工作频率范围：5725 ~ 5850MHz：
   - 发射功率：≤ 500mW 和≤ 27dBm
   - 等效全向辐射功率（EIRP）：≤ 2W 和≤ 33dBm
   - 最大功率谱密度：
     ≤ 13dBm / MHz 和≤ 19dBm / MHz（EIRP）
   - 载频容限：20ppm
   - 带外发射功率（EIRP）：
     ≤ -80dBm / Hz（＜ 5725MHz 或≥ 5850MHz）
   - 杂散发射（辐射）功率：
     ≤ -36dBm / 100kHz（30 ~ 1000MHz）
     ≤ -40dBm / 1MHz（2400 ~ 2483.5MHz）
     ≤ -40dBm / 1MHz（3400 ~ 3530MHz）
     ≤ -33dBm / 100kHz（5725 ~ 5850MHz）
     （注：对应载波 2.5 倍信道带宽以外）
     ≤ -30dBm / 1MHz（其它 1 ~ 40GHz）

2. 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；
3. 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；
4. 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；
5. 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

---

marantz

www.marantz.com

marantz®

GARANTIE LIMITÉE DE MARANTZ CANADA

Marantz Canada ("Marantz") garantie les produits suivants pour les périodes indiquées :

3 ans de garantie pour les pièces et la main d'œuvre prenant effet à partir de la date d'achat du produit :

Amplificateurs, Préamplificateurs, Pré-ampli-processeurs-syntoniseurs; amplificateurs intégrés, Pré-tuner AV, syntoniseurs, récepteurs, Récepteur Audio-Vidéo, Blu-ray DVD Super Audio CD/ Lecteur CD/Changeur, Ampli-tuner CD, Platines TD, Lecteur reseau audio, Convertisseur N/A, télécommandes programmables, Docks iPod et projecteurs avant DLP.

90 jours de garantie pour les pièces et la main d'œuvre prenant effet à partir de la date d'achat du produit :

Lampes DLP

Ce qui est couvert et pas couvert par la garantie :

A l'exception de ce qui est mentionné ci-dessous, cette garantie couvre les pièces et la main d'œuvre afin de réparer tous les défauts de matériel ou de fabrication du produit. Ce qui suit n'est pas couvert par la garantie :

1. Les dommages, détérioration, défauts de fonctionnement, ou le fait de ne pas respecter les spécifications d'exécutions résultant d'un (e) :
   a) accident, acte de la nature, abus, négligence, utilisation impropre ou d'une modification de produit non autorisée ;
   b) installation incorrecte, déplacement, maintenance ou d'un emploi contraire aux instructions fournies avec le produit ;
   c) réparations ou tentatives de réparations par une personne non reconnue par Marantz ;
   d) envoi de produit (les réclamations doivent être présentées au transporteur)
   e) cause autre qu'un défaut de produit.

2. L'entretien, l'installation initiale, toute vérification de produit ou aucun défaut n'a été trouvé, ou tous frais encourus pour l'installation, le déplacement ou la réinstallation du produit.

3. Tout produit dont le numéro de série a été effacé, modifié ou enlevé.

4. Les accessoires incluant mais non limités aux, piles, câbles, matériaux de support, accessoires de nettoyage, antennes et cordons de secteur détachables.

5. La garantie n'est pas valable si l'achat a été fait au Canada chez un revendeur non reconnu par Marantz.

Qui peut faire appliquer la garantie

Seule la personne qui a acheté le produit à l'origine peut faire appliquer la garantie.

Notre paiement

Nous paierons tous les frais de pièces et de main d'œuvre pour tous les produits couverts par la garantie. Le paiement des frais de livraison est abordé dans la section suivante de cette garantie.

Comment obtenir du service

1. Si votre produit Marantz requiert du service, communiquez premièrement avec votre revendeur autorisé afin de connaître s'il peut procéder au service de votre appareil. Vous pouvez aussi consulter la liste des centres de service autorisés sur notre site web au http://ca.marantz.com/162.asp ou contactez nous directement aux coordonnées ci-dessous. Veuillez ne pas retourner votre appareil chez le manufacturier sans autorisation obtenue préalablement.

2. Vous devez payer les frais de livraison dans le cas où votre appareil a besoin d'être envoyé au service des réparations. Toutefois, si les réparations nécessaires sont couvertes par la garantie, nous payerons les frais de retour d'expédition et ce quelle que soit la destination au Canada.

3. Lorsque vous envoyez votre appareil pour un service sous garantie, vous devez joindre une copie de la facture d'achat (ticket ou autre preuve d'achat)

Limites des garanties implicites

Toutes les garanties implicites, y compris les garanties de valeur marchande et spécifique pour un achat particulier, sont limitées dans la durée à la longueur de cette garantie.

Exclusion des dommages

La responsabilité de Marantz est limitée pour n'importe quel produit défectueux en ce qui concerne la réparation ou le remplacement du produit en question. Si des dommages interviennent à des produits autres que ceux de Marantz, Marantz ne sera pas tenu responsable des dits dommages, basés sur le dérangement ou la perte d'utilisation du produit ou tout autre dommage qu'il soit fortuit, indirect ou autre.

Certaines provinces ne permettent pas de limites quant à la durée d'une garantie sous-entendue et/ou ne permettent pas l'exclusion de dommages fortuits ; ainsi les limitations et les exclusions mentionnées ci-dessus peuvent ne pas s'appliquer à votre cas.

Cette garantie vous donne des droits légaux spécifiques, mais vous pouvez aussi avoir d'autres droits qui peuvent varier d'une province à l'autre.

Cette garantie n'est seulement valable qu'au Canada.

MARANTZ Canada

Marantz Canada, LLC. a division of
D&M Canada LLC.
10462 Islington Ave. Unit 8B
Kleinburg, Ontario L0J 1C0 Canada

Marantz Customer Service hours:
10:00 AM to 10:00 PM EST, M-F
12:00 PM to 8:00 PM EST, SAT
Tel: 800-654-6633

www.marantz.com

54311045310AM
VQE1A132T

marantz®

MARANTZ CANADA LIMITED WARRANTY

Marantz Canada ("Marantz") warrants the following Marantz products for the periods indicated:

3-year warranty for both Parts & Labour, from the original purchase date :

Amplifiers; Pre Amplifiers; Pre Amplifier-Processor-Tuners; Integrated Amplifiers; AV Pre Tuner; Tuners; Receivers; AV Surround Receiver; Blu-ray DVD Super Audio CD/CD Players/ Changers; CD Receiver; Turntable; Network Audio Player; D/A Converter; Learning Remote Control Devices; iPod Docks & DLP front Projectors.

90 day warranty for parts and labour from the original purchase date :

DLP lamps

What is Covered and What is Not Covered

Except as specified below, this warranty covers parts and labor to correct all defects in materials and workmanship. The following are not covered by the warranty:

1. Damage, deterioration, malfunction or failure to meet performance specifications resulting from:
   a) Accident; acts of nature; misuse; abuse; neglect; unauthorized product modification.
   b) Improper installation, removal or maintenance, or failure to follow instructions supplied with the product.
   c) Repair or attempted repair by anyone not authorized by Marantz to repair the product.
   d) Any shipment of the product (claims must be presented to the carrier)
   e) Any cause other than a product defect

2. Cleaning, initial set-up, check-ups with no defects found, or charges incurred for installation, removal or reinstallation of the product.

3. Any product on which the serial number has been defaced, modified or removed.

4. Accessories, including but not limited to, batteries, cables, mounting hardware and brackets, cleaning accessories, antenna and detachable power cords.

5. Warranty is void if purchase was made from anyone other than an authorized Marantz dealer.

Who May Enforce the Warranty

Only the original purchaser may enforce this warranty.

What We Will Pay For

We will pay for all labor and material expenses for items covered by the warranty. Payment of shipping charges is discussed in the next section of this warranty.

How You Can Get Service

1. If your unit needs service, please first contact your dealer to see what support services they do offer. You can also contact one of our Authorized Marantz Service Centers as per our website http://ca.marantz.com/162.asp or contact us directly as below. Please do not return your unit to the factory without prior authorization.

2. You must pay any shipping charges if it is necessary to ship the product for service. However, if the necessary repairs are covered under warranty, we will pay the return shipping charges to any destination within Canada.

3. Whenever warranty service is required, you must present the original dated sales receipt or other proof of date of purchase.

Limitation of Implied warranties

All implied warranties, including warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purchase, are limited in duration to the length of this warranty.

Exclusion of damages

Marantz liability for any defective product is limited to repair or replacement of the product at Marantz's option. Marantz shall not be liable for damage to other products caused by any defects in Marantz products, damages based upon inconvenience or loss of use of the product, or any other damages, whether incidental, consequential, or otherwise.

Some provinces do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts and/or does not allow the exclusion of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations and exclusions may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, but you may also have other rights, which vary from province to province.

MARANTZ Canada

Marantz Canada, LLC. a division of
D&M Canada LLC.
10462 Islington Ave. Unit 8B
Kleinburg, Ontario L0J 1C0 Canada

Marantz Customer Service hours:
10:00 AM to 10:00 PM EST, M-F
12:00 PM to 8:00 PM EST, SAT
Tel: 800-654-6633

www.marantz.com

marantz®

Limited Warranty

Marantz America, Inc. ("Marantz") warrants the following Marantz Products for the periods indicated:

1. The following Marantz Audio/Video components, have a 3 year warranty for both Parts & Labor, from the original purchase date:

   Amplifiers, Pre Amplifiers, Pre Amplifier-Processor-Tuners, Integrated Amplifiers, Tuners, Receivers, Blu-ray DVD SA-CD/CD Players/Changers, Learning Remote Control Devices, iPod Docks & DLP front Projectors.

2. **DLP lamps** have a 90 day warranty for parts and labor from the original purchase date.

What is covered and what is not covered

Except as specified below, this warranty covers parts and labor to correct all defects in materials and workmanship. The following are not covered by the warranty:

1. Damage, deterioration, malfunction or failure to meet performance specifications resulting from:
   a) Accident, acts of nature, misuse, abuse, neglect or unauthorized product modification.
   b) Improper installation, removal or maintenance, or failure to follow instructions supplied with the product.
   c) Repair or attempted repair by anyone not authorized by Marantz to repair the product.
   d) Any shipment of the product (claims must be presented to the carrier).
   e) Any cause other than a product defect.

2. Cleaning, initial set-up, check-ups with no defects found, or charges incurred for installation, removal or reinstallation of the product.

3. Any product on which the serial number has been defaced, modified or removed.

4. Batteries.

5. Accessories, including but not limited to, batteries, cables, mounting hardware and brackets, cleaning accessories, antenna and detachable power cords.

6. Warranty is void if purchase was made from anyone other than an authorized Marantz dealer.

Who may enforce the warranty

This warranty extends only to the original purchaser, not subsequent owners.

What we will pay for

We will pay for all labor and material expenses for items covered by the warranty. Payment of shipping charges is discussed in the next section of this warranty.

How you can get service

1. If your unit needs service, contact Marantz customer service by calling **201-762-6666**. We will advise you of the name and location of one or more authorized Marantz service stations from which service can be obtained. Please do not return your unit to the factory without prior authorization.

2. You must pay any shipping charges if it is necessary to ship the product for service. However, if the necessary repairs are covered under warranty, we will pay the return shipping charges to any destination within the United States, its possessions or territories.

3. Whenever warranty service is required, you must present the original dated sales receipt or other proof of date of purchase.

Limitation of implied warranties

All implied warranties, including warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are limited in duration to the length of this warranty and are limited in scope to the terms contained in this warranty. All other warranties are hereby disclaimed.

Exclusion of damages

Marantz liability for any defective product is limited to repair or replacement of the product at Marantz's option. Marantz shall not be liable for damage to other products caused by any defects in Marantz products, damages based upon inconvenience or loss of use of the product, or any other damages, whether incidental, consequential, or otherwise.

How state law relates to the warranty

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts and/or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations or exclusions may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Marantz America, LLC.

100 Corporate Drive,
Mahwah, NJ, 07430-2041
Phone. 201-762-6666